



BEING  
A DISCOURSE  
OF  
Rivers, Fish-ponds, Fish & Fishing.

To which is added,  
The Laws of Angling: With a new Table  
of the Particulars in this Book.

---

*The third Edition much enlarged.*

---

London, Printed for R. Marriot, and are to be sold by Simon  
Gaye near the Inner Temple-gate in Fleetstreet. 1664.

C. 142. b. 18.







*To the Right Worshipfull*

**J O H N O F F L E Y**

*Of MADELY Manor in the County  
of Stafford, Esq;*

*My most honoured Friend,*

*S I R,*



Have made so ill use of  
your former favours, as  
by them to be encoura-  
ged to intreat, that they  
may be enlarged to the *patronage* and  
*protection* of this Book; and I have  
put on a modest confidence, that I  
shall not be deny'd, because it is a  
Discourse of *Fish* and *Fishing*, which  
you know so well, and both love  
and practise so much.

You are assured (though there be

### *The Epistle*

ignorant men of another belief) that *Angling* is an *Art*; and you know that *Art* better than others; and, that this is truth, is demonstrated by the fruits of that pleasant labour which you enjoy when you purpose to give rest to your mind, and divest your self of your more serious business, and (which is often) dedicate a day or two to this *Recreation*.

At which time if *common Anglers* should attend you, and be eye-witnesses of the success, not of your *fortune* but your *skill*, it would doubtless beget in them an emulation to be like you, and that emulation might beget an industrious diligence to be so: but I know it is not attainable by common capacities. And there be now many men of great *wisdom, learning* and *experience*, that love and practise

etise this *Art*, that knowv I speak  
the truth.

Sir, this pleasant curiosity of Fish  
and Fishing, (of which you are so  
great a Master) has been thought  
worthy the *pens* and *practises* of divers  
in other Nations, which have been  
reputed men of great *learning* and *wis-*  
*dom*, and amongst those of this Nati-  
on I remember Sir *Henry Wotton* (a  
dear lover of this *Art*) has told me  
that his intentions were to write a  
Discourse of the *Art*, and in praise of  
*Angling*, and doubtless he had done so  
if death had not prevented him; the  
remembrance of which hath often  
made me sorry, for if he had lived to  
do it, then the unlearned *Angler* had  
seen some better Treatise of this *Art*,  
a Treatise worthy his perusal, which  
(though some have undertaken) I

could never yet see in English.

But mine may be thought as *weak* and as *unworthy* of common view; and I do here freely confesse, that I should rather excuse my self, than censure others, my own Discourse being liable to so many exceptions; against which you (Sir) might make this one, *That it can contribute nothing to your Knowledge.* And lest a longer Epistle may diminish your pleasure, I shall not adventure to make this Epistle any longer than to adde this following truth, *That I am really,*

SIR,

*Your most affectionate Friend,*

*and most humble servant,*

I z. W A.

To all Readers of this Discourse, but especially to the honest *ANGLER*,

**T**hink fit to tell thee these following truths, That I did neither undertake, nor write, nor publish, and much lesse own this Discourse to please my self: and having been too easily drawn to please others, as I propos'd not the gaining of credit by this undertaking, so I would not willingly lose any part of that to which I had a just title before I began it, and therefore desire and hope, if I deserve not commendation, yet I may obtain pardon.

And though this Discourse may be lyable to some exceptions, yet I cannot doubt but that most Readers may receive so much pleasure or profit by it, as may make it worthy the time of their perusal, if they be not very busie men. And this is all the confidence that I can put on concerning the merit of what is here offer'd to their consideration and censure; and if the last prove too severe, I have a liberty, and am resolv'd to neglect it.

And I wish the Reader also to take notice, that in writing of it I have made my self a recreation of a recreation; and that it might prove so to him, and not read dull and tediously, I have in several places mixt (not any scurrility, but) some innocent, harm'ess mirth; of which, if thou be a severe sorrow-complexion'd man, then I here disallow thee to be a competent judge; for Divines say, There are offences given, and offences not given but taken.

## To the Reader.

*And I am the willinger to justify the pleasant part of it, because, though it is known I can be serious at seasonable times, yet the whole Discourse is, or rather was, a picture of my own disposition, especially in such dayes and times as I have laid aside business, and gone a fishing with honest Nat. and R. Roe; but they are gone, and with them most of my pleasant hours, even as a shadow that passeth away, and returnes not.*

*And next let me adde this, that he that likes not the book, should like the excellent picture of the trout, and some of the other fish; which I may take a liberty to commend, because they concern not my self.*

*Next let me tell the Reader, that in that which is the more useful part of this Discourse, that is to say, the observations of the nature, and breeding, and seasons, and catching of fish, I am not so simple as not to know, but that a captious Reader may find exceptions against something said of some of these; and therefore I must intreat him to consider, that experience teaches us to know, that several Countries alter the time, and I think almost the manner of fishes breeding, but doubtless of their being in season; as may appear by three Rivers in Munmothshire, namely Severn, Wie and Usk, where Cambden (Brit. f. 633.) observes, that in the river Wye Salmon are in season from Sept. to April, and we are certain, that in Thames and Trent, and in most other rivers they be in season the 6. hotter moneths.*

*Now for the Art of catching fish, that is to say, how to make a man that was none, to be an Angler*  
by

## To the Reader.

by a book; he that undertakes it shall undertake a harder task, than Mr. Hales (a most valiant and excellent Fencer) who in a printed book called A private School of Defence, undertook by it to teach that art or science, and was laugh'd at for his labor. Not but that many useful things might be learnt by that book, but he was laugh'd at, because that art was not to be taught by words, but practice: and so must Angling. And in this Discourse I do not undertake to say all that is known, or may be said of it, but I undertake to acquaint the Reader with many things that are not usually known to every Angler; and I shall leave gleanings and observations enough to be made out of the experience of all that love and practise this recreation, to which I shall encourage them. For Angling may be said to be so like the Mathematicks, that it can ne're be fully learnt; at least not so fully, but that there wil stil be more new experiments left for the trial of other men that succeed us.

But I think all that love this game may here learn something that may be worth their money, if they be not poor and needy men; and in case they be, I then wish them to forbear to buy it; for I write not to get money, but for pleasure, and this Discourse boasts of no more; for I hate to promise much, and deceive the Reader.

And however it proves to him, yet I am sure I have found a high content in the search and conference of what is here offer'd to his view and censure: I wish him as much in the perusal of it, and so I might here take my leave, but will stay a little  
and



and tell him, that whereas it is said by many, that in flye-fishing for a Trout the Angler must observe his twelve several flies for the twelve moneths of the year; I say he that follows that rule, shall be as sure to catch fish, and be as wise as he that makes Hay by the fair dayes in an Almanack, and no surer; for those very flies that use to appear about and on the water in one monoth of the year, may the following year come almost a moneth sooner or later, as the same year proves colder or hotter; and yet in the following Discourse I have set down the twelve flies that are in reputation with many Anglers, and they may serve to give him some light concerning them. And he may note that there is in Wales and other Countries, peculiar flies, proper to the particular place or Country; and doubtless, unless a man makes a flye to counterfeit that very flye in that place, he is like to lose his labour, or much of it: But for the generality, three or four flies neat and rightly made, and not too big, serve for a Trout in most rivers all the Summer. And for Winter flie-fishing it is as useful as an Almanack out of date. And of these (because as no man is born an artist, so no man is born an angler) I thought fit to give thee this notice.

When I have told the Reader, that in this third Impression there are many enlargements, gathered both by my own observation, and the communication of friends, I shall stay him no longer then to wish him a rainy evening to read this following Discourse; and that (if he be an honest Angler) the East wind may never blow when he goes a Fishing.



*To my dear Brother-in-law Mr. Iz. Walton, upon his Complete Angler.*

**E**Rasmus in his learned Colloquies  
Has mixt some toyes, that by varieties  
He might entice all Readers: for in him  
Each child may wade, or tallest giant swim.  
And such is this Discourse: there's none so low,  
Or highly learn'd, to whom hence may not flow  
Pleasure and information: both which are  
Taught us with so much art, that I might swear  
Safely, the choicest Critick cannot tell,  
Whether your matchless judgment most excell  
In *Angling* or its *praise*: where commendation  
First charms, then makes an art a recreation.

'Twas so to me: who saw the cheerful Spring  
Pictur'd in every meadow, heard birds sing  
Sonnets in every grove, saw fishes play  
In the cool crystal streams, like lambs in May:  
And they may play, till Anglers read this book;  
But after, 'tis a wise fish escapes a hook.

*Jo. Floud, Mr. of Arts.*

---

*To the Reader of the  
Complete Angler.*

**F**irst mark the Title well; my Friend that gave it  
Has made it good; this book deserves to have it.  
For he that views it with judicious looks,  
Shall find it full of art, baits, lines and hooks.

The world the river is; both you and I,  
And all mankind are either fish or fry:  
If we pretend to reason, first or last  
His baits will tempt us, and his hooks hold fast.

*Plea-*

Pleasure or profit, either prose or rhyme,  
If not at first, will doubtless take's in time.

Here sits in secret blest *Theology*,  
Waited upon by grave *Philosophy*,  
Both *natural* and *moral*; *History*  
Deck'd and adorn'd with flowers of *Poetry*;  
The matter and expression striving which  
Shall most excell in worth, yet not seem rich:  
There is no danger in his *baits*, that *hook*  
Will prove the safest, that is surest took.

Nor are we caught alone, but (which is best)  
We shall be wholsom, and be toothsom drest:  
Drest to be fed, not to be fed upon;  
And danger of a surfeit ere is none.  
The solid food of serious Contemplation  
Is sauc'd here with such harmless recreation,  
That an *ingenious* and *religious* mind  
Cannot inquire for more than it may find  
Ready at once prepar'd, either t'excite  
Or satisfie a curious appetite.

More praise is due; for 'tis both positive  
And truth, which once was interrogative,  
And utter'd by the Poet then in jest,  
*Et piscatorem piscis amare potest.*

C. H. Mr. of Arts.

---

*To my dear Friend, Mr. IZ. Walton, in  
praise of Angling, which we both love.*

Down by this smooth streams wandring side,  
Adorn'd and perfum'd with the pride  
Of *Flora's* Wardrobe, where the shrill  
Aerial Quire express their skill,  
First in alternate melody,  
And then in Chorus all agree.

Whilst

Whilst the charm'd fish, as extasi'd  
With sounds, to his own throat deny'd,  
Scorns his dull Element, and springs  
I'th' air, as if his Fins were wings.

'Tis here that pleasures sweet and high  
Prostrate to our embraces lye.

Such as to Body, Soul or Fame  
Create no sickness, sin or shame.

Roses not fenc'd with pricks grow here,  
No sting to th' Hony-bag is near.  
But (what's perhaps their prejudice)  
They difficulty want and price.

An obvious Rod, a twist of hayr,  
With hook hid in an insect, are  
Engines of sport, would fit the wish  
O'th' Epicure, and fill his dish.

In this clear stream let fall a *Grub*,  
And straight rake up a *Dace* or *Chub*.  
I'th' mud your worm provokes a *Snig*,  
Which being fast, if it prove big,  
The *Gotham* olly will be found  
Discreet, e're ta'ne she must be drown'd.

The *Tench* (Physician of the Brook)  
In yon dead hole expects your hook,  
Which having first your pastime been,  
Serves then for meat or medicine.

Ambush't behind that root doth stay  
A *Pike*, to catch and be a prey.  
The trecherous *Quill* in this slow stream  
Betrayes the hunger of a *Bream*.

And at that nimbler *Lord*, (no doubt)  
Your false fly cheats a speckled *Trout*.

When you these creatures wisely chuse  
To practise on, which to your use  
Owe their creation, and when  
Fish from your arts do rescue men,  
To plot, delude and circumvent,  
Ensnare and spoil, is innocent.

Here by these crystal streams you may  
Preserve a Conscience clear as they,  
And when by sullen thoughts you find  
Your harass'd, not busied, mind  
In sable melancholy clad,  
Distemper'd, serious, turning sad;  
Hence fetch your cure, cast in your bait,  
All anxious thoughts and cares will straight  
Fly with such speed, they'l seem to be  
Possess'd with the *Hydrophobie*.

The waters calmness in your brest,  
And smoothness in your brow shall rest.

Away with sports of charge and noise,  
Sweeter are cheap and silent joys,  
Such as *Astæons* game pursue,  
Their fate oft makes the Tale seem true.  
The sick or sullen *Hawk* to day  
Flyes not; to morrow, quite away.  
Patience and Purse to Cards and Dice  
Too oft are made a sacrifice:  
The Daughters dowre, th'inheritance  
O'th' son, depend on one mad chance.  
The harms and mischiefs which th'abuse  
Of wine doth every day produce,  
Make good the Doctrine of the *Turks*,  
That in each grape a devil lurks,  
And by yon fading sapless tree,  
'Bout which the *Ivy* twin'd you see,  
His fate's foretold, who fondly places  
His bliss in womans soft embraces.  
All pleasures, but the Anglers, bring  
I'th' tail repentance like a sting.

Then on these banks let me sit down,  
Free from the toilsom Sword and Gown,  
And pity those that do affect  
To conquer Nations, and protect.  
My Reed affords such true content,  
Delights so sweet and innocent,

seldom fall unto the lot  
Of Scepters, though they'r justly got.

*Tho. Weaver, Mr. of Arts.*

*To the Readers of my most ingenuous Friends  
Book, The Complete Angler.*

He that both knew and writ the Lives of men,  
Such as were once, but must not be agen;  
Witness his matchless *Donne* and *Wotton*, by  
Whose 2yd he could their speculations try;  
He that convers'd with *Angels*, such as were  
*Ouldfworth* and *Fa'tly*, each a shining star  
Shewing the way to *Bethlem*; each a Saint;  
Compar'd to whom our *Zealots* now but paint:  
He that our pious and learn'd *Marley* knew,  
And from him suck'd wit and devotion too;  
He that from these such excellencies fetch'd,  
That He could tell how high and far they reach'd;  
What learning this, what graces th'other had;  
And in what sever'al dress each soul was clad;  
Reader, this *HE*, this *Fisherman* comes forth,  
And in these *Fishers* weeds would shroud his worth.  
Now his mute Harp is on a Willow hung,  
With which, when finely toucht, and firly strung,  
He could friends passions for these times allay;  
Or chain his fellow-*Anglers* from their prey,  
But now the musick of his pen is still,  
And he sits by a brook watching a quill:  
Where with a fixt eye and a ready hand,  
He studies first to hook, and then to land  
Some *Trout*, or *Peaych*, or *Pike*; and having done,  
Sits on a bank, and tells how this was won,  
And that escap'd his hook; which with a wile  
Did eat the bit, and *Fisherman* beguile.  
Thus whilst some vex they from their lands are thrown,  
He joyes to think the waters are his own;

And, like the Dutch, he gladly can agree  
To live at peace now, and have fishing free.  
April 3. 1650. *Edw. Pove', Mr. of Arts.*

*To my dear Brother, Mr. Iz. Walton,  
on his Complete Angler.*

**T**HIS Book is so like you, and you like it;  
For harmless Mirth, Expression, Art and Wit,  
That I protest ingenuously 'tis true,  
I love this Mirth, Art, Wit, the Book and You.  
*Rob. Floud, C.*

*Charissimo amicissimoq; Fratri, Domino Isacco Walton,  
Artis Piscatorix peritissimo.*

**U**Nicus est Medicus reliquorum piscis, & istis  
Fas quibus est Medicum tangere, certa salus.  
Hic typus est Salvatoris mirandus Iesu,  
b Litera mysterium qualibet hujus habet.  
Hunc cupio, hunc capias (bone frater Arundinis) ἰχθὺν ;  
q Solveret hic pro me debita, teq; Deo.  
Piscis is est, & piscator, (mihi credito) qualem  
Vel piscatorem piscis amare velit.

q Mat. 17 27. the  
last words of the  
Chapter.

b ἰχθὺς Piscis.  
I Ἰησοῦς Jesus.  
χ Χριστὸς Christus.  
δ Θεὸς Dei.  
υ ὁ Υἱὸς Filius.  
σ σωτὴρ Salvator.

Henry Bagley, Artium Magister.



THE  
COMPLETE ANGLER,  
OR,  
The Contemplative Man's  
Recreation.

CHAP. I.

*A Conference betwixt an Angler, a Falkner,  
and a Hunter, each commending  
his Recreation.*

{ PISCATOR.  
{ VENATOR.  
{ AUCEPS.

*Pisc.*



OU are well overtaken,  
Gentlemen, a good mor-  
ning to you both; I have  
stretched my legs up  
Tottenham-hill to over-  
take you, hoping your

business may occasion you towards Ware this  
fine fresh May morning.

B

*Venat.*



*Venat.* Sir, I for my part shall almost answer your hopes, for my purpose is to drink my mornings draught at the *Thatcht House* in *Hodsden*, and I think not to rest till I come thither, where I have appointed a friend or two to meet me : but for this Gentleman that you see with me, I know not how far he intends his journey; he came so lately into my company, that I have scarce had time to ask him the question.

*Anceps.* Sir, I shall by your favour bear you company as far as *Thebalds*, and there leave you, for then I turn up to a friends house who mews a Hawk for me, which I now long to see.

*Venat.* Sir, we are all so happy as to have a fine, fresh, cool morning, and I hope we shall each be the happier in the others company. And Gentlemen, that I may not lose yours, I shall either abate or amend my pace to enjoy it ; knowing that (as the Italians say) *Good company makes the way to seem the shorter.*

*Anceps.* It may do so Sir, with the help of good discourse, which methinks we may promise from you that both look and speak so cheerfully : and for my part I promise you, as an invitation to it, that I will be as free and open hearted, as discretion will allow me to be with strangers.

*Ven.* And Sir, I promise the like.



*Pisc.* I am right glad to hear your answers, and in confidence you speak the truth, I shall put on a boldness to ask you Sir, Whether business or pleasure caused you to be so early up, and walk so fast, for this other Gentleman hath declared he is going to see a Hawk, that a friend mews for him.

*Ven.* Sir mine is a mixture of both, a little business and more pleasure, for I intend this day to do all my business, and then bestow another day or two in hunting the Otter, which a friend that I go to meet, tells me, is much pleasanter than any other chase whatsoever; howsoever I mean to try it; for to morrow morning we shall meet a pack of Otter dogs of noble *Mr. Sadlers* upon *Amwell hill*, who will be there so early, that they intend to prevent the Sun-rising.

*Pisc.* Sir, my fortune has answered my desires, and my purpose is to bestow a day or two in helping to destroy some of those villainous vermin, for I hate them perfectly, because they love fish so well, or rather, because they destroy so much; indeed so much, that in my judgment all men that keep Otter-dogs ought to have pensions from the King to encourage them to destroy the very breed of those base Otters, they do so much mischief.

*Ven.* But what say you to the Foxes of the Nation, would not you as willingly have them

destroyed ? for doubtlesse they do as much mischief as *Otters* do.

*Pisc.* Oh Sir if they do, it is not so much to me and my Fraternity as those base Vermine the *Otters* do.

*Auc.* Why Sir, I pray, of what Fraternity are you, that you are so angry with the poor *Otters* ?

*Pisc.* I am (Sir) a brother of the *Angle*, and therefore an Enemy to the *Otter* : for you are to note, that we Anglers all love one another, and therefore do I hate the *Otter* both for my own and for their sakes who are of my brotherhood.

*Ven.* And I am a lover of Hounds, I have followed many a pack of dogs many a mile, and heard many merry men make sport and scoff at Anglers.

*Auc.* And I professe my self a Falkner, and have heard many grave serious men pity them, 'tis such a heavy, contemptible, dull recreation.

*Pisc.* You know Gentlemen, 'tis an easie thing to scoff at any Art or Recreation ; a little wit mixt with ill nature, confidence and malice will do it ; but though they often venture boldly, yet they are often caught even in their owne trap, according to that of *Lucian*, the father of the family of Scoffers.

Lucian well skill'd in scoffing, this hath writ,  
 Friend, that's your folly which you think your wit :  
 This you vent oft, void both of wit and fear,  
 Meaning another, when your self you jeere.

If to this you add what Solomon sayes of  
 Scoffers, That they are an abomination to man-  
 kind. Let him that thinks fit be a Scoffer still,  
 I account them enemies to me, and to all that  
 love vertue and Angling.

And for you that have heard many grave se-  
 rious men pity Anglers ; let me tell you Sir,  
 there be many men that are by others taken to  
 be serious grave men, which we contemn and  
 pity. Men that are taken to be grave, because  
 Nature hath made them of a sower complexion,  
 money-getting-men, men that spend all their  
 time first in getting, and next in anxious care  
 to keep it ; men that are condemned to be rich,  
 and then always busie or discontented: for these  
 poor-rich-men, we Anglers pity them perfect-  
 ly, and stand in no need to borrow their  
 thoughts to think our selves happy. No, no,  
 Sir, we enjoy a contentednesse above the reach  
 of such dispositions, and as the learned and in-  
 genuous \* *Mountagne* sayes like him-  
 self freely, [ 'When my Cat and I  
 entertain each other with mutual apish tricks  
 (as playing with a garter) who knowes but

\* In Apol. for  
 Ra. Sebend.

‘ that I make my Cat more sport then she makes  
 ‘ me ? shall I conclude her to be simple, that  
 ‘ has her time to begin or refuse sportivenesse as  
 ‘ freely as I my self have ? Nay, who knowes  
 ‘ but that it is a defect of my not understanding  
 ‘ her language (for doubtlesse Cats talk and rea-  
 ‘ son with one another) that we agree no better ;  
 ‘ and who knows but that she pitties me for be-  
 ‘ ing no wiser, and laughs and censures my fol-  
 ‘ lie for making sport for her when we play to-  
 ‘ gether.

Thus freely speaks *Mountagne* concerning  
 Cats, and I hope I may take as great a liberty  
 to blame any man, and laugh at him too let him  
 be never so serious, that hath not heard what  
 Anglers can say in the justification of their Art  
 and Recreation, which I may again tell you is  
 so full of pleasure, that we need not borrow  
 their thoughts to think our selves happy.

*Ven.* Sir, you have almost amazed me, for  
 though I am no scoffer, yet I have (I pray let me  
 speak it without offence) alwayes looked up-  
 on Anglers as more patient and more simple  
 men, then I fear I shall find you to be.

*Pisc.* Sir, I hope you will not judge my ear-  
 nestness to be impatience : and for my *simplici-*  
*ty*, if by that you mean a harmlesness, or that  
 simplicity which was usually found in the pri-  
 mitive Christians, who were (as most Anglers  
 are) quiet men, and followers of peace ; men  
 that

that were so simply-wise, as not to sell their Consciencés to buy riches, and with them vexation and a fear to dye. If you mean such simple men as lived in those times when there were fewer Lawyers; when men might have had a Lordship safely conveyed to them in a piece of Parchment no bigger than your hand, (though several sheets will not do it safely in this wiser age) I say, Sir, if you take us Anglers to be such simple men as I have spoke of, then myself and those of my Profession will be glad to be so understood: But if by simplicity you meant to express a general defect in those that profess and practise the excellent art of Angling, I hope in time to disabuse you, and make the contrary appear so evidently, that if you wil but have patience to hear me, I shall remove all the Anticipations that discourse, or time, or prejudice have possess'd you with against that laudable and ancient art; for I know it is worthy the *knowledge* and *practice* of a wise man.

But (Gentlemen) though I be able to do this, I am not so unmannerly as to ingross all the discourse to my self; and therefore you two having declared your selves, the one to be a lover of *Hawks*, the other of *Hounds*, I shall be most glad to hear what you can say in the commendation of that Recreation which you love and practise; and having heard what you can say, I shall be glad to exercise your attention with

what I can say concerning my own Recreation, and by this means we shall make the way to seem the shorter : and if you like my motion, I would have Mr. *Falkner* to begin.

*Auc.* Your motion is consented to with all my heart, and to testifie it I will begin as you have desired me.

And first, for the Element that I use to trade in, which is the *Air*, an Element of more worth than weight, an Element that doubtless exceeds both the *Earth* and *Water* ; for though I sometimes deal in both, yet the air is most properly mine, I and my Hawks use that most, and it yields us most recreation ; it stops not the high soaring of my noble generous *Falcon*, in it she ascends to such an height, as the dull eyes of beasts and fish are not able to reach to ; their bodies are too gross for such high elevations : in the air my troops of Hawks soar up on high, and when they are lost in the sight of men, then they attend upon and converse with the gods, therefore I think my *Eagle* is so justly styled, *Joves faithful servant in Ordinary* : and that very *Falcon*, that I am now going to see, deserves no meaner a title, for she usually in her flight endangers her self, (like the son of *Dedalus*) to have her wings scorched by the Suns heat, but her mettle makes her careless of danger, for she then heeds nothing, but makes her nimble Pinnions cut the fluid air, and so makes her high

way

ay over the steepest mountains and deepest rivers, and in her glorious carere looks with contempt upon those high Steeples and magnificent Palaces which we adore and wonder at ; from which height I can make her to descend by a word from my mouth (which she both knows and obeyes) to accept of meat from my hand, to own me for her master, to go home with me, and be willing the next day to afford me the like recreation.

And more, this Element of air which I profess to trade in, the worth of it is such, and it is of such necessity, that no creature whatsoever, not onely those numerous creatures that feed on the face of the earth, but those various creatures that have their dwelling within the waters, every creature that hath life in its Nostrils stands in need of my Element. The waters cannot preserve the fish without air, witness the not-breaking of Ice in an extreme Frost ; the reason is, for that if the inspiring and expiring Organ of any animal be stopt, it suddenly yields to Nature, and dies. Thus necessary is *air* to the existence both of *fish* and *beasts*, nay, even to man himself ; that air or breath of life with which God at first inspired Mankind, he, if he wants it, dies presently, becomes a sad object to all that loved and beheld him, and in an instant turns to putrefaction.



Nay more, the very birds of the air, (that be not Hawks) are both so many and useful and pleasant to mankind, that I must not let them pass without some observations. They both feed and refresh him; feed him with their choice bodies, and refresh him with their heavenly voices. I will not undertake to mention the several kinds of Fowle by which this is done; and his curious palate pleased by day and which with their very excrements afford him a soft lodging at night. These I will pass by, but not those little nimble Musicians of the air, that warble forth their curious Ditties with which Nature hath furnished them to the shame of Art.

As first the *Lark*, when she means to rejoyce to cheer her self and those that hear her, she then quits the earth, and sings as she ascends higher into the air, and having ended her heavenly imploiment, grows then mute and sad to think she must descend to the dull earth, which she would not touch but for necessity.

How doth the *Black-bird* and *Thrassell* with their melodious voices bid welcome to the cheerful Spring, and in their fixed Moneths warble forth such ditties as no art or instrument can reach to?

Nay, the smaller birds also do the like in their particular seasons, as namely the *Levrock*, the *Tit-lark*, the little *Linner*, and the honest



the best Robin, that loves man-kind both alive and dead.

But the *Nightingale* (another of my Airy Creatures,) breaths such sweet lowd musick out of her little instrumentall throat, that it might make mankind to think Miracles are not ceased. He that at midnight, (when the very laborer sleeps securely) should hear (as I have very often) the clear aires, the sweet descants, the naturall rising and falling, the doubling and redoubling of her voice, might well be lifted above earth, and say, Lord, what Musick hast thou provided for the Saints in Heaven, when thou affordest men such musick on earth !

And this makes me the lesse to wonder at the many *Aviaries* in *Italy*, or at the great charge of *Varro* his *Aviarie*, the ruines of which are yet to be seen in *Rome*, and is still so famous there, that it is reckoned for one of those Notables which men of forrain nations either record or lay up in their memories when they return from travell.

This for the birds of pleasure, of which very much more might be said. My next shall be of Birds of Politicall use ; I think 'tis not to be doubted that Swallowes have been taught to carry Letters betwixt two Armies. But 'tis certain that when the Turks besieged *Malta* or *Rodes* (I now remember not which 'twas) Pi-

geons

Nay more, the very birds of the air, (that be not Hawks) are both so many and useful and pleasant to mankind, that I must not let them pass without some observations. They both feed and refresh him; feed him with their choice bodies, and refresh him with their heavenly voices. I will not undertake to mention the several kinds of Fowle by which this is done; and his curious palate pleased by day and which with their very excrements afford him a soft lodging at night. These I will pass by, but not those little nimble Musicians of the air, that warble forth their curious Ditties with which Nature hath furnished them to the shame of Art.

As first the *Lark*, when she means to rejoice to cheer her self and those that hear her, she then quits the earth, and sings as she ascends higher into the air, and having ended her heavenly imploiment, grows then mute and sad to think she must descend to the dull earth, which she would not touch but for necessity.

How doth the *Black-bird* and *Thrassell* with their melodious voices bid welcome to the cheerful Spring, and in their fixed Moneths warble forth such ditties as no art or instrument can reach to?

Nay, the smaller birds also do the like in their particular seasons, as namely the *Leverock*, the *Tut-lark*, the little *Linnet*, and the ho-

nest

the best Robin, that loves man-kind both alive and dead.

But the *Nightingale* (another of my Airy Creatures,) breaths such sweet lowd musick out of her little instrumentall throat, that it might make mankind to think Miracles are not ceased. He that at midnight, (when the very laborer sleeps securely) should hear (as I have very often) the clear aires, the sweet descants, the naturall rising and falling, the doubling and redoubling of her voice, might well be lifted above earth, and say, Lord, what Musick hast thou provided for the Saints in Heaven, when thou affordest men such musick on earth !

And this makes me the lesse to wonder at the many *Aviaries* in *Italy*, or at the great charge of *Varro* his *Aviarie*, the ruines of which are yet to be seen in *Rome*, and is still so famous there, that it is reckoned for one of those Notables which men of forrain nations either record or lay up in their memories when they return from travell.

This for the birds of pleasure, of which very much more might be said. My next shall be of Birds of Politicall use ; I think 'tis not to be doubted that Swallowes have been taught to carry Letters betwixt two Armies. But 'tis certain that when the Turks besieged *Malta* or *Rodes* (I now remember not which 'twas) *Pigeons*

geons are then related to carry and recarry Letters. And Mr. G. Sandis in his Travells (fol. 269.) relates it to be done betwixt *Aleppo* and *Babylon*. But if that be disbelieved, 'tis not to be doubted that the *Dove* was sent by *Noah*, to give him notice of Land, when to him all appeared to be Sea, and the *Dove* proved a faithfull messenger. And for the Sacrifices of the Law, a pair of *Turtle Doves* or young *Pigeons* were as well accepted as costly *Bulls* and *Rams*. And when God would feed the Prophet *Elijah*, (*1 King. 17.*) after a kind of miraculous manner hee did it by *Ravens*, who brought him meat morning and evening. Lastly, the Holy Ghost when he descended visibly upon our Saviour, did it by assuming the shape of a *Dove*. And to conclude this part of my Discourse, pray remember these wonders were done by birds of the aire, the Element in which they and I take so much pleasure.

There is also a little contemptible winged Creature (an Inhabitant of my Aerial Element) namely the laborious *Bee*, of whose *Prudence*, *Policy* and regular Government of their own Commonwealth I might say much, as also of their severall kinds, and how usefull their honey and wax is both for meat and Medicines to mankind; but I will leave them to their sweet labor, without the least disturbance, believing them to be all very busie amongst the herbs and  
flowers

flowers that we see nature puts forth this *May* morning.

And now to return to my hawks from whom I have made too long a Digression ; you are to note, that they are usually distinguished into two kinds ; namely the long-winged and the short-winged Hawk : of the first kind, there be chiefly in use amongst us in this Nation,

The *Gerfalcon* and *Jerkin*.

The *Falcon* and *Tassel-gentel*.

The *Laner* and *Laneret*.

The *Bockerel* and *Bockeret*.

The *Saker* and *Sacaret*.

The *Marlin* and *Jack Marlin*.

The *Hoby* and *Jack*.

There is the *Stelletto* of *Spain*.

The *Blond red Rook* from *Turky*.

The *Waskite* from *Virginia*.

And there is of short winged Hawks,

The *Eagle* and *Iron*.

The *Goshawk* and *Tarcel*.

The *Sparhawk* and *Musket*.

The *French Pye* of two sorts.

These are reckoned Hawks of note and worth, but we have also of an inferiour rank.

The *Stanyel*, the *Ringtail*.

The *Raven*, the *Buzzard*.

The forked *Kite*, the bald *Buzzard*,

The

The *Hen-driver*, and others that I forbear to name.

Gentlemen, If I should enlarge my Discourse to the observation of the *Eires*, the *Branchers*, the *Ramish-Hawk*, the *Haggard*, and the two sorts of *Lentners*, and then treat of their severall *Ayries*, their *Mewings*, rare order of casting, and the renovation of their *Feathers*, their reclaiming, dyeting, and then come to their rare stories of practice ; I say, if I should enter into these, and many other observations that I could make, it would be much, very much pleasure to me : but lest I should break the rules of Civility with you, by taking up more then the proportion of time allotted to me, I will here break off, and intreat you Mr. *Venator*, to say what you are able in the commendation of Hunting, to which you are so much affected, and if time wil serve, I will beg your favor for a further enlargment of some of those several heads of which I have spoken. But no more at present.

*Venat.* Well Sir, and I will now take my turn, and will first begin with a commendation of the earth, as you have done most excellently of the Air, the Earth being that Element upon which I drive my pleasant wholesome hungry trade. The Earth is a solid, settled Element ; an Element most universally beneficiall both to man and beast ; to men who have their severall

recreations upon it, as Horse-races, Hunting, sweet smells, pleasant walks. The earth feeds man, and all those several beasts that both feed him and afford him recreation : What pleasure doth man take in hunting the stately *Stag*, the generous *Buck*, the *Wild Boar*, the cunning *Otter*, the crafty *Fox*, and the fearful *Hare* ? And if I may descend to a lower game, what pleasure is it sometimes with Gins to betray the very vermine of the earth ? as namely the *Fishat*, the *Fulmart*, the *Feret*, the *Pole-cat*, the *Mould-warp*, and the like creatures that live upon the face, and within the bowels of the earth. How doth the earth bring forth *herbs*, *flowers* and *fruits*, both for *physick* and the *pleasure* of mankind ? and above all, to me at least, the fruitful *Vine*, of which when I drink moderately, it clears my brain, cheers my heart, and sharpens my wit. How could *Cleopatra* have feasted *Mark Antony* with eight *Wild Boars* roasted whole at one *Supper*, and other meat suitable, if the earth had not been a bountiful mother ? But to pass by the mighty *Elephant*, which the earth breeds and nourisheth, and descend to the least of creatures, how doth the earth afford us a doctrinal example in the little *Pismire*, who in the Summer provides and layes up her Winter-provision, and teaches man to do the like ? the earth feeds and carries those horses that carry us. If I would be prodigal of my time and your patience,



ence, what might not I say in commendation of the earth? That puts limits to the proud and raging *Sea*, and by that means preserves both man and beast that it destroyes them not; as we see it daily doth those that venture upon the sea and are there shipwreckt, drowned, and left to feed Haddocks; when we that are so wise as to keep our selves on *earth*, walk, and talk, and live and eat, and drink, and go a *hunting*: of which recreation I will say a little, and then leave Mr *Piscator* to the commendation of Angling.

*Hunting* is a game for Princes and noble persons; it hath been highly prized in all Ages, it was one of the qualifications that *Xenophon* bestowed on his *Cyrus*, that he was a Hunter of wild beasts. Hunting trains up the younger Nobility to the use of manly exercises in their riper age. What more manly exercise than *hunting the wild Bore*, the *Stag*, the *Buck*, the *Fox* or the *Hare*? How doth it preserve health, and increase strength and activity?

And for the Dogs that we use who can commend their excellency to that height which they deserve? How perfect is the Hound at *smelling*, who never leaves nor forsakes his sent, but follows it thorow so many changes and varieties of other sents, even over and in the water, and into the earth? What musique doth a pack of Dogs then make to any man, whose heart and ears are so happy as to be set to the



tune of such instruments? How will a right *Greyhound* fix his eye on the best *Buck* in a *herd*, single him out and follow him, and him onely through a whole herd of *Rascal* game, and still know and kill him? For my Hounds I know the language of them, and they know the language and meaning of one another as perfectly as we know the voices of those with whom we discourse daily.

I might enlarge my self in the commendation of *hunting*, and of the noble hound especially, as also of the docibleness of *dogs* in general; and I might make many observations of Land-creatures, that for composition, order, figure and constitution, approach neereſt to the completeness and understanding of man; especially of those creatures which *Moses* in the Law permitted to the Jews, (which have cloven Hoofs and chew the Cud) which I shall forbear to name, because I will not be so uncivil with Mr. *Piscator*, as not to allow him a time for the commendation of *Angling*, which he calls an Art, but doubtless 'tis an easie one: and Mr. *Auceps*, I doubt we shall hear a watry discourse of it, but I hope 'twill not be a long one.

*Auc.* And I hope so too, though I feare it will.

*Pisc.* Gentlemen, let not prejudice preposseſſe you. I confesse my discourse is like to  
C
prove

prove futable to my Recreation, *calm* and *quiet*; we feldome take the name of God into our mouths, but it is either to praise him or pray to him; if others use it vainly in the midst of their recreations, so vainly as if they meant to conjure, I must tell you it is neither our fault nor our custom; we, we protest against it. But, pray remember I accuse nobody; for as I would not make a *watry* discourse, so I would not put too much *vinegar* into it, nor would I raise the reputation of my own Art by the diminution or ruine of anothers. And so much for the Prologue to what I mean to say.

And now for the *Water*, the Element that I trade in. The *water* is the eldest daughter of the Creation, the Element upon which the Spirit of God did first move, the Element which God commanded to bring forth living creatures abundantly; and without which those that inhabit the Land, even all creatures that have breath in their nostrils must suddenly return to putrefaction. *Moses* the great Law-giver and chief Philosopher, skilled in all the learning of the Egyptians, who was called the friend of God, and knew the mind of the Almighty, names this element the first in the Creation; this is the element upon which the Spirit of God did first move, and is the chief Ingredient in the Creation: Many Philosophers have made it to comprehend all the other Elements, but

but most allow it the chiefest in the mixtion of all living creatures.

There be that profess to believe that all bodies are made of *water*, and may be reduced back again to water onely : they endeavour to demonstrate it thus :

Take a *Willow*, (or any like speedy growing plane) newly rooted in a box or barrel full of earth, weigh them all together exactly when the tree begins to grow, and then weigh all together after the tree is increased from its first rooting to weigh an hundred pound weight more than when it was first rooted and weighed ; and you shall find this augment of the tree to be without the diminution of one dram of the earth. Hence they infer this increase of wood to be from water of rain, or from dew, and not to be from any other Element. And they affirm, they can reduce this wood back again to water ; and they affirm also the same may be done in any *animal* or *vegetable*. And this I take to be a fair testimony of the excellency of my element of water.

The *Water* is more productive than the *Earth*. Nay, the earth hath no fruitfulness without showers or dews ; all the *herbs*, and *flowers*, and *fruit* are produced and thrive by the water ; and the very Minerals are fed by streams that run under ground, whose natural course carries them to the tops of many high mountains, as

we see by several springs breaking forth on the tops of the highest hills, and is also witnessed by the daily tryal and testimony of several Miners.

Nay, the increase of those creatures that are bred and fed in the water, are not onely more and more miraculous, but more advantagious to man, not onely for the lengthning of his life, but for the preventing of sickness; for 'tis observed by the most learned Physicians, that the casting off of Lent and other Fish-dayes, (which hath not onely given the Lie to so many learned, pious, wise Founders of Colledges, for which we should be ashamed) hath doubtless been the chief cause of those many putride, shaking, intermitting Agues, unto which this Nation of ours is now more subject than those wiser Countries that feed on Herbs, Sallets and plenty of Fish; of which it is observed in Story, that the greatest part of the world now do. And it may be fit to remember that *Moses* (*Lev. 11.9. Dent. 14.9.*) appointed fish to be the chief diet for the best Common-wealth that ever yet was.

And it is observable not onely that there are *fish*, (as namely the *Whale*) three times as big as the mighty Elephant, that is so fierce in battel; but that the mightiest Feasts have been of Fish. The *Romans* in the height of their glory have made fish the mistress of all their entertainments;

tainments;

tainments ; they have had Musique to usher in their *Sturgeon*, *Lampreyes* and *Mullet*, which they would purchase at rates rather to be wondered at than believed. He that shall view the Writings of *Macrobius* or *Varro*, may be confirmed and informed of this, and of the incredible value of their fish and fish-ponds.

But, Gentlemen, I have almost lost my self, which I confess I may easily do in this Philosophical Discourse ; I met with most of it very lately (and I hope happily) in a conference with a most learned Physician, a dear friend, that loves both me and my art of Angling. But however I will wade no deeper in these mysterious arguments, but pass to such Observations as I can manage with more pleasure, and lesse fear of running into error. But I must not yet forsake the Waters, by whose help we have so many known advantages.

And first, (to passe by the miraculous cures of our known *Baths*) how advantagious is the *Sea* for our daily Traffique, without which we could not now subsist ? How does it not onely furnish us with food and physick for the bodies, but with such observations for the mind as ingenuous persons would not want?

How ignorant had we been of the beauty of *Florence*, of the *Monuments*, *Urns* and *Rarities* that yet remain in and near unto old and new *Rome*, (so many as it is said will take up a years

time to view, and afford to each but a convenient consideration;) and therefore it is not to be wondred at, that so learned and devout a Father as *St. Jerome*, after his wish to have seen Christ in the flesh, and to have heard *St. Paul* preach, makes his third wish to have seen *Rome* in her glory; and that beauty is not yet all lost, for what pleasure is it to see the Monuments of *Livy*, the choicest of Historians; of *Tully*, the best of Orators; and to see the Bay-trees that now grow out of the very Tomb of *Virgil*? These to any that love learning. But what pleasure is it to a devout Christian to see there the humble house in which Saint *Paul* was content to dwell; and to view the many rich *Statues* that are there made in honour of his memory? nay, to see the very place in which Saint *Peter* and he lie buried together? These are in and near to *Rome*. And how much more doth it please the pious curiosity of a Christian to see that place on which the blessed Saviour of the world was pleased to humble himself, and to take our nature upon him, and to converse with men; to see Mount *Sion*, *Jerusalem*, and the very Sepulchre of our Jesus? How may it beget and heighten the zeal of a Christian to see the Devotions that are daily paid to him at that place? Gentlemen, lest I forget my self I will stop here, and remember you, that but for my Element of water the Inhabitants of this poor

Inland



Island must remaine ignorant that such things have yet a being.

Gentlemen, I might both inlarge and lose my self in such like Arguments; I might tell you that Almighty God is said to have spoken to a *Fish*, but never to a *Beast*; that he hath made a *Whale* a Ship to carry and set his Prophet *Jonah* safe on the appointed shore. Of these I might speake, but I must in manners break off, for I see *Thehalds* house. I cry you mercy for being so long, and thank you for your patience.

*Anceps.* Sir, My pardon is easily granted you: I except against nothing that you have said, neverthelesse I must part with you at this Park-wall, for which I am very sory; but I assure you Mr. *Piscator* I now part with you full of good thoughts, not only of your self, but your Recreation. And so gentlemen, God keep you both.

*Pisc.* Well, now Mr. *Venator* you shall neither want time nor my attention to hear you inlarge your Discourse concerning Hunting.

*Venat.* Not I Sir, I remember you said that *Angling* it self was of great Antiquity, and a perfect Art, and an Art not easily attained to; and you have so won upon me in your former discourse, that I am very desirous to hear what you can say further concerning those particulars.



*Pisc.* Sir, I did say so, and I doubt not but if you and I did converse together but a few houres, to leave you posselt with the same high and happy thoughts that now possess me of it ; not only of the Antiquity of *Angling*, but that it deserves commendations, and that it is an Art, and an Art worthy the knowledg & practise of a wise man.

*Venat.* Pray Sir speak of them what you think fit, for we have yet five miles to the *Thatch House*, during which walk I dare promise you my patience and diligent attention shall not be wanting. And if you shall make that to appear which you have undertaken, first, that it is an Art, and an Art worth the learning, I shall beg that I may attend you a day or tway a fishing, and that I may become your Scholer, & be instructed in the Art it self which you so much magnifie.

*Piscat.* O Sir, doubt not but that *Angling* is an Art, and an Art worth your learning : the Question is rather whether you be capable of learning it ? for *Angling* is somewhat like *Poetry*, men are to be born so : I mean with inclinations to it, though both may be heightned by practise and experience ; but he that hopes to be a good *Angler* must not only bring an inquiring, searching, observing wit, but he must bring a large measure of hope and patience, and a love and propensity to the Art it self ; but having once got and practis'd it, then doubt not but *Angling* will prove to be so pleasant that

that it will prove like Vertue, a reward to it self.

*Venat.* Sir, I am now become so full of expectation that I long much to have you proceed, and in the order that you propose.

*Pisc.* Then first, for the antiquity of *Angling*, of which I shall not say much, but only this ; Some say it is as ancient as *Deucalions* Flood ; others, that *Belus*, who was the first Inventer of Godly and vertuous recreations, was the first Inventer of *Angling* : & some others say (for former times have had their disquisitions about the Antiquity of it) that *Seth*, one of the sons of *Adam*, taught it to his sons, & that by them it was derived to posteritie : others say, that he left it ingraven on those pillars which he erected, and trusted to preserve the knowledg of the *Mathematicks*, *Musick*, and the rest of that precious knowledg, & those usefull Arts, which by Gods appointment or allowance and his noble industry were thereby preserved from perishing in *Noahs* flood.

These Sir, have been the opinions of severall men, that have possibly endeavoured to make *angling* more ancient then is needfull, or may well be warranted ; but for my part, I shall content my self in telling you that *Angling* is much more ancient then the Incarnation of our Saviour ; for in the Prophet *Amos* mention is made of *fish-hooks* ; and in the Book of *Job* (which was long before the days of *Amos*, for that book

is said to be writ by *Moses*) mention is made also of fish-hooks, which must imply Anglers in those times.

But my worthy friend, as I would rather prove my self a *Gentleman* by being *learned*, and *humble*, *valliant*, and *inoffensive*, *vertuous* and *communicable*, then by any fond ostentation of riches, or wanting these vertues my self, boast that these were in my Ancestors (and yet I grant that where a noble and ancient descent and such merits meet in any man, it is a double dignification of that person :) So if this Antiquity of *angling*, (which for my part I have not forced,) shall like an anciant family, be either an honour or an ornament to this vertuous Art which I profess to love and practice, I shall be the gladder that I made an accidentall mention of the antiquitie of it; of which I shall say no more but proceed to that just commendations which I think it deserves.

And for that I shall tell you, that in ancient times a debate hath risen, (and it remaines yet unresolved) Whether the happinesse of man in this world doth consist more in *Contemplation* or *action*.

Concerning which some have endeavoured to maintain their opinion of the first, by saying, *That the nearer we Mortals come to God by way of imitation, the more happy we are.* And they say, *That God enjoys himself only by a contemplation*

of

of his own infinitenesse, Eternity, Power and Goodness, and the like. And upon this ground many Cloysteral men of great learning and devotion prefer *Contemplation* before *action*. And many of the Fathers seem to approve this opinion, as may appear in their Commentaries upon the words of our Saviour to *Martha*, *Luke* 10. 41, 42.

And on the contrary, there want not men of equal authority and credit, that prefer *action* to be the more excellent, as namely *experiments in Physick*, and the application of it, both for the ease and prolongation of mans life; by which each man is enabled to act and do good to others, either to serve his Countrey, or do good to particular persons; and they say also, *That action is Doctrinal, and teaches both art and vertue, and is a maintainer of humane society*; and for these and other like reasons to be preferred before *contemplation*.

Concerning which two Opinions I shall forbear to adde a third by declaring my own, and rest my self contented in telling you, (my very worthy friend) that both these meet together, and do most properly belong to the most honest, ingenuous, quiet, and harmelesse art of *Angling*.

And first, I shall tell you what some have observed, (and I have found to be a real truth) that the very sitting by the Rivers side is not onely

onely the quietest and fittest place for *contem-  
pation*, but will invite an Angler to it: and  
this seems to be maintained by the learned *Pe-  
du Moline*, who (in his Discourse of the Fulfil-  
ling of Prophecies) observes, that when God  
intended to reveal any future events or high  
notions to his Prophets, he then carried them  
either to the *Deserts* or the *Sea-shore*, that ha-  
ving so separated them from amidst the press of  
*people*, and *businessse*, and the cares of the world,  
he might settle their minds in a quiet repose,  
and make them fit for Revelation.

And this seems also to be intimated by the  
Children of *Israel*, (*Psal.* 137.) who having in  
a sad condition banished all mirth and musique  
from their pensive hearts, and having hung up  
their then mute Harps upon the Willow trees  
growing by the rivers of *Babylon*, fate downe  
upon those Banks bemoaning the ruines of *Si-  
on*, and contemplating their omn sad condi-  
tion.

And an ingenuous *Spaniard* sayes, *That rivers  
and the Inhabitants of the watry Element were made  
for wise men to contemplate, and fools to passe by  
without consideration.* And though I will not rank  
my self in the number of the first, yet give me  
leave to free my self from the last, by offering  
to you a short contemplation, first of *rivers* and  
then of *fish*; concerning which I doubt not but  
to give you many observations that will appear  
very

very considerable : I am sure they have appeared so to me, and made many an hour passe away more pleasantly, as I have sat quietly on a flowery Bank by a calm river, and contemplated what I shall now relate to you.

And first concerning Rivers, there be divers wonders reported of them by Authors of such credit, that we need not deny them an Historical faith.

As namely of a river in *Epirus*, that puts out any lighted Torch, and kindles any Torch that was not lighted. Some Waters being drunk cause madnesse, some drunkenesse, and some laughter to death. The river *Selarus* in a few hours turns a rod or wand to be stone ; and our *Cambden* mentions the like in *England*, and the like in *Lochmere* in *Ireland*. There is also a river in *Arabia*, of which all the sheep that drink thereof have their wool turned into a Vermillion colour. And one of no lesse credit than *Aristotle* tells us of a merty river, (the river *Elusina*) that dances at the noise of musique, for with musique it bubbles, dances and grows sandy, and so continues till the musique ceases, but then it presently returns to its wonted calmness and clearness. And *Cambden* tells us of a Well near to *Kerby* in *Westmoreland*, that ebbs and flows several times every day : and he tells us of a river in *Surrey*, (it is called *Mole*) that after it has run several miles, being opposed by hills, finds



finds or makes it self a way under ground, and breaks out again so far off, that the Inhabitants thereabout boast, (as the *Spaniards* do of their river *Anus*) that they feed divers flocks of sheep upon a Bridge. And, lastly, for I would not tire your patience, one of no lesse authority than *Iosephus* that learned Jew, tells us of a river in *Iudea*, that runs swiftly all the six dayes of the week, and stands still and rests all their *Sabbath*.

But, Sir, lest this Discourse may seem tedious, I shall give it a sweet conclusion out of that holy Poet Mr. *George Herbert* his Divine Contemplation on Gods Providence :

*Lord, who hath praise enough, nay, who hath any?  
None can expresse thy works, but he that knows them;  
And none can know thy works, they are so many,  
And so complete, but onely he that owes them.*

*We all acknowledge both thy power and love  
To be exact, transcendent and divine ;  
Who dost so strangely and so sweetly move,  
Whilst all things have their end, yet none but thine.*

*Wherefore, most sacred Spirit, I here present  
For me, and all my fellows, praise to thee ;  
And just it is that I should pay the rent,  
Because the benefit accrues to me.*



And as concerning Fish, in that Psalm, (*Psal.* 104.) wherein for height of Poetry and Wonders the Prophet *David* seems even to exceed himself, how doth he there express himself in choice Metaphors, even to the amazement of a contemplative Reader, concerning the *Sea*, the *Rivers*, and the *Fish* therein contained? And the great Naturalist *Pliny* sayes, *That Natures great and wonderful power is more demonstrated in the Sea than on the Land.* And this may appear by the numerous and various creatures, inhabiting both in and about that Element; as to the Readers of *Gesner*, *Randelitius*, *Pliny*, *Ausonius*, *Aristotle*, and others, may be demonstrated. But I will sweeten this discourse also out of a Contemplation in Divine *Dubartas*, who sayes,

*Dubartas in  
the fifth day.*

*God quickned in the sea and in the rivers,  
So many fishes of so many features,  
That in the waters we may see all creatures,  
Even all that on the earth is to be found,  
As if the world were in deep waters drown'd.  
For seas (as well as skies) have Sun, Moon, Stars;  
(As well as air) Swallows, Rooks and Stares;  
(As well as earth) Vines, Roses, Nettles, Melons,  
Mushrooms, Pinks, Gilliflowers, and many millions  
Of other plants, more rare, more strange than these,  
As very fishes living in the seas;*

*As*

*As also Rams, Calves, Horses, Hares and Hogs,  
Wolves, Urchins, Lions, Elephants and Dogs;  
Yea, Men and Maids, and which I most admire,  
The mitred Bishop, and the cowed Fryer.  
Of which, examples but a few years since,  
Were shewn the Norway and Polonian Prince.*

These seem to be wonders, but have had so many confirmations from men of learning and credit, that you need not doubt them; nor are the number, nor the various shapes of fishes, more strange or more fit for contemplation, than their different natures, inclinations and actions; concerning which I shall beg your patient ear a little longer.

The *Cuttle-fish* will cast a long gut out of her throat, which (like as an Angler doth his line) she sendeth forth and pulleth in again at her pleasure, according as she sees some little fish come near to her; and the *Cuttle-fish* (being then hid in the gravel) lets the smaller fish nibble and bite the end of it, at which time she by little and little draws the smaller fish so near to her, that she may leap upon her, and then catches and devours her: and for this reason some have called this fish the *Sea-angler*.

And there is a fish called a *Hermit*, that at a certain age gets into a dead fishes shell, and like a Hermite dwells there alone, studying the

wind

*Mount. Es-  
sayes: and  
others affirm  
this.*

wind and weather, and so turns her shell that she makes it defend her from the injuries that they would bring upon her.

There is also a fish called by *Elian* (in his 9. book of Living Creatures, Chap. 16.) the *Adonis*, or Darling of the Sea: so called, because it is a loving and innocent fish, a fish that hurts nothing that hath life, and is at peace with all the numerous Inhabitants of that vast watery Element: and truly I think most Anglers are so disposed to most of mankind.

And there are also lustful and chaste Fishes, of which I shall give you examples.

And first, what *Dubartas* sayes of a fish called the *Sargus*; which (because none can expresse it better then he does) I shall give you in his owne words, supposing it shall not have the lesse credit for being Verse, for he hath gathered this, and other observations out of Authors that have been great and industrious searchers into the secrets of Nature.

*The Adult'rous Sargus doth not only change  
Wifes every day in the deep streams, but (strange)  
As if the honey of Sea-love delight  
Could not suffice his rangeing appetite,  
Goes courting She-Goats on the grassie shore,  
Horning their husbands that had horns before.*

And the same Author writes concerning the

D

*Cantharus,*

*Cantharus*, that which you shall also heare in his own words.

*But contrary, the constant Cantharus,  
Is ever constant to his faithful Spouse,  
In nuptial duties spending his chaste life,  
Never loves any but his own dear wife.*

Sir, but a little longer, and I have done.

*Venat.* Sir, take what libertie you think fit, for your discourse seems to be Musique, and charms me into an attention.

*Pisc.* Why then Sir, I will take a little liberty to tell, or rather to remember you what is said of *Turtle-Doves*: First, That they silently plight their troth and marry; and that then, the Survivor scornes (as the *Thracian women* are said to do) to out-live his or her mate; and this is taken for such a truth, and if the Survivor shall ever couple with another, then not only the living, but the dead, (be it either the He or the she) is denyed the name and honour of a true *Turtle-Dove*.

And to parallel this Land Rarity, and teach mankind morall faithfulnessse, and to condemne those that talk of Religion, and yet come short of the morall faith of fish and fowle; Men that violate the Law affirmed by Saint Paul (*Rom. 2. 14, 15.*) to be writ in their hearts, (and which he sayes, shall at the last day condemne and leave

leave them without excuse.) I pray *Dubartas* fifth day:  
 hearken to what *Dubartas* sings, (for  
 the hearing of such conjugal faithfulness, will  
 be Musick to all chaste ears) and therefore I  
 pray hearken to what *Dubartas* sings of the  
*Mullet*.

*But for chaste love the Mullet hath no peer ;  
 For, if the Fisher hath surpriz'd her pheer,  
 As mad with wo, to shore she followeth,  
 Prest to consort him both in life and death.*

On the contrary, what shall I say of the *Honse-Cock*, which treads any Hen, and then (contrary to the *Swan*, the *Partridge* and *Pigeon*) takes no care to hatch, to feed or to cherish his own brood, but is senselesse though they perish.

And 'tis considerable, that the *Hen* (which because she also takes any *Cock*, expects it not) who is sure the Chickens be her own, hath by a morall impression her care and affection to her own Brood more then doubled, even to such a height, that our Saviour in expressing his love to *Jerusalem* (*Mat. 23. 37.*) quotes her for an example of tender affection, as his Father had done *Job* for a pattern of patience.

And to parallel this *Cock*, there be divers fishes that cast their spawn on flags or stones, and then leave it uncovered, and exposed to become a prey, and be devoured by Vermine

or other fishes : but other fishes (as namely the *Barbel*) take such care for the preservation of their seed, that (unlike to the *Cock* or the *Cuckoe*) they mutually labour (both the Spawner and the Melter) to cover their Spawn with sand, or watch it, or hide it in some secret place unfrequented by Vermine, or by any Fish but themselves.

Sir, these Examples may, to you and others, seem strange ; but they are testified some by *Aristotle*, some by *Pliny*, some by *Gesner*, and by many others of credit, and are believed and known by divers, both of wisdom and experience, to be a Truth ; and indeed are (as I said at the beginning) fit for the contemplation of a most serious and a most pious man. And doubtless this made the Prophet *David* say, *They that occupy themselves in deep waters see the wonderful works of God* : indeed such wonders and pleasures too as the land affords not.

And that they be fit for the contemplation of the most prudent, and pious, and peaceable men, seems to be testified by the practice of so many devout and contemplative men, as the *Patriarchs* and *Prophets* of old, and of the *Apostles* of our Saviour in these later times ; of which twelve he chose four that were Fishermen, whom he inspired and sent to publish his blessed Will to the *Gentiles*, freedom from the incombrances of the Law, and a new way to everlasting

ing life : this was the imployment of these Fishermen. Concerning which choice some have made these Observations.

First, that he never reprov'd these for their Imployment or Calling, as he did the *Scribes* and the *Money-changers*. And secondly, he found that the hearts of such men by nature were fitted for contemplation and quietness; men of mild, and sweet, and peaceable spirits, as indeed most Anglers are: these men our blessed Saviour, (who is observed to love to plant grace in good natures) though nothing be too hard for him, yet these men he chose to call from their irreprovable imployment of Fishing, and gave them grace to be his Disciples, and to follow him. I say foure of twelve.

And it is observable, that it was our Saviours will that these our four Fishermen should have a priority of nomination in the catalogue of his twelve Apostles, (*Mat. 10.*) as namely first *St. Peter*, *St. Andrew*, *St. James* and *St. John*, and then the rest in their order.

And it is yet more observable, that when our blessed Saviour went up into the Mount, when he left the rest of his Disciples, and chose onely three to bear him company at his *Transfiguration*, that those three were all Fishermen. And it is to be believed, that all the other Apostles, after they betook themselves to follow Christ, betook themselves to be Fishermen



too ; for it is certain that the greater number of them were found together a Fishing by Jesus after his Resurrection, as is recorded in the 21. Chapter of St. *Johns* Gospel.

And since I have your promise to hear me with patience, I will take a liberty to look back upon an observation that hath been made by an ingenuous and learned man, who observes that God hath been pleased to allow those, whom he himself hath appointed to write his holy Will in holy Writ, yet to express his Will in such Metaphors as their former affections or practice had inclined them to ; & he brings *Solomon* for an example, who before his conversion was remarkably carnally-amorous ; and after by Gods appointment writ that spiritual, holy, amorous Love-song (the *Canticles*) betwixt God and his Church, (in which he sayes she had *Eyes like the fish-pools of Heshbon.*)

And if this hold in reason as I see none to the contrary, then it may be probably concluded, that *Moses* (whom, I told you before, writ the Book of *Job*) and the Prophet *Amos*, who was a Shepherd, were both Anglers, for you shall in all the Old Testament find Fish-hooks, I think but twice mentioned, namely, by meek *Moses* the friend of God, and by the humble Prophet *Amos*.

Concerning which last, namely the Prophet *Amos*, I shall make but this Observation, That  
he

he that shall read the *humble, lowly, plain style* of that *Prophet*, and compare it with the *high, glorious, eloquent style* of the *Prophet Isaiah* (though they be both equally true) may easily believe him to be, not onely a *Shepherd*, but a good-natur'd, plain *Fisher-man*.

Which I do the rather believe by comparing the affectionate, loving, lowly, humble *Epistles* of *S. Peter, S. James* and *S. John*, whom we know were all *Fishers*, with the glorious language and high *Metaphors* of *St. Paul*, whom we may believe was not.

And for the lawfulness of *Fishing*, it may very well be maintained by our *Saviours* bidding *St. Peter* cast his hook into the water and catch a *Fish*, for money to pay *Tribute* to *Cæsar*. And let me tell you, that *angling* is of high esteem, and of much use in other Nations. He that reads the *Voyages* of *Ferdinand Mendez Pinto*, shall find that there he declares to have found a *King* and several *Priests* a *Fishing*.

And he that reads *Plutarch*, shall find that *Angling* was not contemptible in the dayes of *Mark Antony* and *Cleopatra*, and that they in the midst of their wonderful glory used *Angling* as a principal recreation. And let me tell you, that in the *Scripture* *angling* is alwayes taken in the best sense, and that though hunting may be sometimes so taken, yet it is but seldom to be so understood. And let me adde

this more, he that views the ancient Ecclesiastical Canons, shall find *Hunting* to be forbidden to Church-men, as being a toilsom, perplexing Recreation ; and shall find *angling* allowed to *Clergy-men*, as being a harmlesse Recreation, a recreation that invites them to *contemplation* and *quietnesse*.

I might here enlarge my self by telling you what commendations our learned *Perkins* bestowes on angling : and how dear a lover, and great a practiser of it our learned Doctor *Whitaker* was, as indeed many others of great note have been. But I will content my self with two memorable men, that lived neer to our own time, whom I also take to have been ornaments to the Art of Angling.

The first is Doctor *Nowel* sometimes Dean of the Cathedral Church of Saint *Paul* in *London*, where his Monument stands yet undefaced ; a man that in the Reformation of Queen *Elizabeth* (not that of *Henry the VIII.*) was so noted for his meek spirit, deep learning, prudence and piety, that the then Parliament and Convocation both, chose, enjoined and trusted him to be the man to make a Catechism for publick use, such a one as should stand as a rule for faith and manners to their posterity. And the good old man (though he was very learned, yet knowing that God leads us not to heaven by many nor by hard questions) like an honest Angler, made

made that *good, plain, unperplext* Catechism which is printed with our good old Service Book. I say, this good man was as a dear lover, and constant practicer of Angling, as any Age can produce; and his custome was to spend besides his fixt hours of prayer, (those houres which by command of the Church were enjoyned the Clergy, and voluntarily dedicated to devotion by many Primitive Christians :) besides those hours, this good man was observed to spend a tenth part of his time in Angling; and also (for I have conversed with those which have conversed with him) to bestow a tenth part of his Revenue, and usually all his fish, amongst the poor that inhabited near to those Rivers in which it was caught; saying often, *That charity gave life to Religion*: and at his return to his house would praise God he had spent that day free from worldly trouble; both harmlesly, and in a Recreation that became a Church-man. And this good man was well content, if not desirous, that posterity should know he was an *angler*, as may appear by his Picture, now to be seen and carefully kept in *Brasenose Colledge*, (to which he was a liberall Benefactor) in which Picture he is drawn leaning on a Desk with his Bible before him, and on one hand of him his *lines, hooks*, and other *tackling* lying in a round; and on his other hand is his *Angle-rods* of severall sorts: and by them this is written, *That he*  
*died*

died 13 Feb. 1601. being aged 95. years, 44. of which he had been Dean of St. Pauls Church; and that his age had neither impair'd his hearing, nor diminish'd his eyes, nor weaken'd his memory, nor made any of the faculties of his mind weak or uselesse. 'Tis said that angling and temperance were great causes of these blessings, and I wish the like to all that imitate him, and love the memory of so good a man.

My next and last example shall be that undervaluer of money, the late Provost of *Eton* Colledge, Sir *Henry Wotton*, (a man with whom I have often fish'd and convers'd) a man whose foreign Employments in the service of this Nation, and whose experience, learning, wit and cheerfulnesse made his company to be esteemed one of the delights of mankind; this man, whose very approbation of angling were sufficient to convince any modest censurer of it, this man was also a most dear lover, and a frequent practiser of the art of angling; of which he would say, 'Twas an employment for his idle time, which was then not idly spent: for angling was after tedious Study, a rest to his mind, a cheerer of his spirits, a diverter of sadnesse, a calmer of inquiet thoughts, a moderator of passions, a procurer of contentednesse: and that it begot habits of peace and patience in those that profess'd and practis'd it. Indeed, my friend, you will find angling to be like the vertue of Humility, which has a calm-

ness of spirit, and a world of other blessings attending upon it.

Sir, this was the saying of that learned man, and I do easily believe that *peace*, and *patience*, and a calme *content* did cohabit in the cheerful heart of Sir *Henry Wotton*, because I know that when he was beyond seventy years of age, he made this description of a part of the present pleasure that possess'd him, as he sat quietly in a Summers evening on a bank a Fishing; it is a description of the Spring, which, because it glides as soft and sweetly from his pen, as that river does at this time by which it was then made, I shall repeat it unto you.

*This day dame Nature seem'd in love :  
The lusty sap began to move ;  
Fresh juice did stir th' imbracing Vines,  
And birds had drawn their valentines,  
The jealous Trout, that low did lye,  
Rose at a well-dissembled flie ;  
There stood my friend with patient skil,  
Attending of his trembling quill.  
Already were the eaves possess'd  
With the swift Pilgrims dawbed nest :  
The Groves already did rejoyce,  
In Philomels triumphing voice :  
The showres were short, the weather mild,  
The morning fresh, the evening smil'd.  
Jone takes her neat rub'd pail, and now*

*She*



*She trips to milk the sand-red Cow ;  
 Where, for some sturdy foot-ball Swain,  
 Jone strokes a fillibub or twain.  
 The fields and gardens were beset  
 With Tulips, Crocus, Violet,  
 And now, though late, the modest Rose  
 Did more then half a blush disclose.  
 Thus all looks gay, and full of cheer  
 To welcome the new livery'd year.*

These were the thoughts that then possess the  
 undisturbed mind of Sir Henry Wotton. Will  
 you hear the wish of another Angler, and the  
 commendation of his happy life which he  
 also sings in Verse? viz. 70. Davors Esq.

*Let me live harmlesly, and near the brink  
 Of Trent or Avon have a dwelling place;  
 Where I may see my quill or cork down sink  
 With eager bit of Peach, or Bleak, or Dace ;  
 And on the world and my Creator think,  
 Whilst some men strive, ill gotten goods t'imbrace ;  
 And others spend their time in base excessse  
 Of wine or worse, in war and wantonness.*

*Let them that list, these pastimes still pursue,  
 And on such pleasing fancies feed their fill,  
 So I the fields and meadows green may view,  
 And daily by fresh Rivers walk at wil,  
 Among the Daiesies and the Violets blue.*



*Red Hiacynth, and yellow Daffadil,  
Purple Narcissus like the morning rayes,  
Pale Ganderlasse, and azure Culverkayes.*

*I count it higher pleasure to behold  
The stately compasse of the loftie skie,  
And in the midst thereof (like burning gold)  
The flaming Chariot of the worlds great eye,  
The watry clouds, that in the air up rold,  
With sundry kinds of painted colours flye;  
And fair Aurora lifting up her head,  
Still blushing, rise from old Tithonius bed.*

*The hills and mountaines raised from the plains,  
The plains extended level with the ground,  
The grounds divided into sundry vains,  
The veins inclos'd with rivers running round;  
These rivers making way through natures chains  
With headlong course into the sea profound;  
The raging sea, beneath the vallies low,  
Where lakes and rils and rivulets do flow.*

*The lofty woods the forrests wide and long  
Adorn'd with leaves and branches fresh and green,  
In whose cool bowres the birds with many a song  
Do welcome with their Quire the Summers Queen:  
The Meadowes fair where Flora's gifts among  
Are intermixt, with verdant grasse between.  
The silver-scaled fish that softly swim  
Within the sweet brooks chrystal warry stream.*

*All*

*All these, and many more of his Creation,  
That made the Heavens, the Angler oft doth see,  
Taking therein no little delectation,  
To think how strange, how wonderfull they be ;  
Framing thereof an inward contemplation,  
To set his heart from other fancies free :  
And whilst he looks on these with joyfull eye,  
His mind is wrapt above the starry Skie.*

Sir I am glad my memory has not lost these last Verses, because they are somewhat more pleasant and more suitable to *May-Day*, than my harsh Discourse : and I am glad your patience hath held out so long, as to hear them and me : for both together have brought us within the sight of the *Thatcht house*: and I must be your Debtor (if you think it worth your attention) for the rest of my promised discourse, till some other opportunity, and a like time of leisure.

*Venat.* Sir, you have Angled me on with much pleasure to the *thatcht house* : and I now find your words true *That good company makes the way seem short*, for trust me, Sir, I thought we had wanted three miles of this *House* till you shewed it to me : but now we are at it, we'll turn into it, and refresh our selves with a cup of drink and a little rest.

*Pisc.* Most gladly (Sir) and we'll drink a civil cup to all the *Otter Hunters* that are to meet you to morrow.

*Ven.* That we will Sir, and to all the lovers of Angling too, of which number, I am now willing to be one my self, for by the help of your good discourse and company, I have put on new thoughts both of the Art of Angling, and of all that professe it: and if you will but meet me to morrow at the time and place appointed, and bestow one day with me and my friends in hunting the *Otter*, I will dedicate the next two dayes to wait upon you, and we two will for that time do nothing but angle, and talk of fish and fishing.

*Pisc.* 'Tis a match, Sir, I'll not fail you, God willing, to be at *Ammel-hill* to morrow morning before Sunrising.

## CHAP. II.

### *Observations of the Otter and Chub.*

*Venat.* **M**Y friend *Piscator*, you have kept time with my thoughts, for the Sun is just rising, and I my self just now come to this place, and the dogs have just now put down an *Otter*, look down at the bottome of the hill there in that Meadow, chequered with *water-Lillies*, and *Lady-smocks*, there you may see what work they make; look looke, you may see

see all busie, men and dogs, dogs and men, all busie.

*Pisc.* Sir, I am right glad to meet you, and glad to have so fair an entrance into this dayes sport, and glad to see so many dogs, and more men all in pursuit of the *Otter*; lets complement no longer, but joine unto them; come honest *Venator*, lets be gone, lets make hast, I long to be doing: no reasonable hedge or ditch shall hold me.

*Ven.* Gentleman Huntsman, where found you this *Otter*?

*Hunt.* Marry (Sir) we found her a mile from this place a fishing; she has this morning eaten the greatest part of this *Trout*; she has only left thus much of it as you see, and was fishing for more: when we came we found him just at it: but we were here very early, we were here an hour before Sun-rise, and have given her no rest since we came: sure she'l hardly escape all these dogs and men. I am to have the skin if we kill him.

*Ven.* Why, Sir, whats the skin worth?

*Hunt.* 'Tis worth ten shillings to make gloves; the gloves of an *Otter* are the best fortification for your hands that can be thought on against wet weather.

*Pisc.* I pray, honest Huntsman, let me ask you a pleasant question, do you hunt a beast or a fish?

*Hunt.* Sir, It is not in my power to resolve  
you

you, I leave it to be resolved by the Colledg of *Carthusians*, who have made vowes never to eat flesh. But I have heard, the question hath been debated among many great Clerks, and they seem to differ about it ; yet most agree that his tail is Fish : and if his body be Fish too, then I may say, that a Fish will walk upon land, (for an *Otter* does so) somtimes five or six, or ten miles in a night. But (Sir) I can tell you certainly, that he devours much Fish, and kils and spoils much more then he eats : And I can tell you, that this Dog-fisher (for so the Latins call him) can smell a Fish in the water an hundred yards from him (*Gesner* says, much farther) and that his stones are good against the Falling-sickness: and that there is an herb *Benione*, which being hung in a linnen cloth near a Fish-pond, or any haunt that he uses, makes him to avoid the place ; which proves he smell both by water and land : and I can tell you there is brave hunting this Water-dog in *Cornwall*, where there have been so many, that our *Campden* sayes, there is a river called *Ottersey*, which was so named, by reason of the abundance of *Otters* that bred and fed in it.

And thus much for my knowledge of the *Otter*, which you may now see above water at vent, and the dogs close with him ; I now see he will not last long, follow therefore my Masters, follow, for *Sweetlips* was like to have him at this vent.

E

Ven.

*Ven.* Oh me, all the Horfe are got over the River, what fhall we do now ? fhall we follow them over the water ?

*Hunt.* No, Sir, no, be not fo eager, ftay a little and follow me, for both they and the dogs will be suddenly on this fide again, I warrant you : and the *Otter* too, it may bee : now have at him with *Kilbuck*, for hee vents again.

*Ven.* Marry fo he is, for look he vents in that corner. Now, now *Ringwood* has him : now he's gone again, and has bit the poor dog. Now *Sweetlips* has her : hold her *Sweetlips* ! now all the dogs have her, fome above and fome under water ; but now, now ſhe's tyr'd, and paſt loſing : come bring him to me, *Sweetlips*. Look, 'tis a Bitch-*Otter*, and ſhe has lately whelp'd, let's go to the place where ſhe was put down, and not far from it you will find all her young ones, I dare warrant you, and kill them all too.

*Hunt.* Come, Gentlemen, come all, let's go to the place where we put down the *Otter*. Look you, hereabout it was that ſhe kenell'd ; look you, here it was indeed, for here's her young ones, no leſs than five ; come let's kill them all.

*Piſc.* No, I pray Sir, ſave me one, and I'll try if I can make her tame, as I know an ingenuous Gentleman in *Leiceſter-ſhire* (Mr. *Nich. Seagreave*) has done ; who hath not onely made her tame, but to catch Fiſh, and do many other things of much pleaſure.

*Hunt.*

*Hunt.* Take one with all my heart, but let us kill the rest. And now let's go to an honest Ale-house, where we may have a cup of good *Barley-wine*, and sing *Old Rose*, and all of us rejoyce together.

*Venat.* Come my friend, *Piscator*, let me invite you along with us; I'll bear your charges this night, and you shall bear mine to morrow; for my intention is to accompany you a day or two in Fishing.

*Pisc.* Sir, your request is granted, and I shall be right glad, both to exchange such a courtesie, and also to enjoy your company.

*Venat.* Well, now let's go to your sport of Angling.

*Pisc.* Let's be going with all my heart. God keep you all, Gentlemen, and send you meet this day with another Bitch-Otter, and kill her merrily, and all her young ones too.

*Ven.* Now, *Piscator*, where will you begin to fish?

*Pisc.* We are not yet come to a likely place, I must walk a mile further yet before I begin.

*Venat.* Well then, I pray as we walk tell me freely, how do you like mine Hoste and the company? is not mine Hoste a witty man?

*Pisc.* Sir, I will tell you presently what I think of your Hoste; but first I will tell you, I am glad these *Otters* were killed, and I am sorry there are no more *Otter-killers*: for I know



that the want of *Otter-killers*, the not keeping the *Fence moneths* for the preservation of *fish*, will in time prove the destruction of all *rivers*; and those very few that are left that make conscience of the Laws of the Nation, and of keeping dayes of abstinence, will be forced to eat flesh, or suffer more inconveniences than is yet foreseen.

*Venat.* Why, Sir, what be those that you call the *Fence moneths*?

*Pisc.* Sir, they be principally three, namely, *March, April* and *May*, these being the usual moneths that *Salmon* come out of the sea to spawn in most fresh rivers, and their Fry would about a certain time return back to the salt water, if they were not hindred by *weres* and *unlawful gins*, which the greedy Fisher-men set, and so destroy them by thousands, as they would (being so taught by nature) change the *fresh* for *salt water*. He that shall view the wise Statutes made in the 13. of *Edw. the I.* and the like in *Rich. the III.* may see several provisions made against the destruction of Fish: and though I profess no Knowledge of the Law, yet I am sure the regulation of these defects might be easily mended. But I remember that a wise friend of mine did usually say, *That which is every bodies businesse is no bodies businesse*. If it were otherwise, there could not be so many Nets and Fish that are under the Statute size sold daily

dairy amongst us, and of which the *conservators* of the waters should be ashamed.

But above all, the taking Fish in Spawning-time, may be said to be against nature; it is like the taking the dam on the nest when she hatches her young: a sin so against nature, that Almighty God hath in holy Writ made a Law against it.

But the poor Fish have enemies enough beside such unnatnral *Fisher-men*, as namely the *Otters* that I spake of, the *Cormorant*, the *Bitterne*, the *Osprey*, the *Seagull*, the *Herne*, the *King-fisher*, the *Gorrara*, the *Puet*, the *Swan*, *Goose*, *Ducks*, and the *Craber*, which some call the *Water-rat*: against all which any honest man may make a just quarrel, but I will not, I will leave them to be quarrelled with, and kild by others; for I am not of a cruel nature, I love to kill nothing but Fish.

And now to your question concerning your Hoste, to speak truly, he is not to me a good companion: for most of his conceits were either Scripture jests, or lascivious jests; for which I count no man witty, for the Devil will help a man that way inclined to the first, and his own corrupt nature (which he alwayes carries with him) to the later. But a companion that feasts the company with *wit* and *mirth*, and leaves out the sin (which is usually mixt with them) he is the man; and indeed such a com-

panion should have his charges born: and to such company I hope to bring you this night; for at *Trout-Hall*, not far from this place, where I purpose to lodge to night, there is usually an angler that proves good company: and let me tell you, good company and good discourse are the very sinews of vertue: but for such discourse as we heard last night, it infects others, the very boyes will learn to talk and swear as they heard mine Host, and another of the company that shall be nameless; I am sorry he is a Gentleman, for less Religion will not save their souls than a beggars; I think more will be required at the last great day. Well, you know what Example is able to do, and I know what the Poet sayes in the like case, which is worthy to be noted by all parents and people of civility:

—— ——— *Many a one*  
*Owes to his Countrey his Religion:*  
*And in another would as strongly grow,*  
*Had but his nurse or mother taught him so.*

This is reason put into Verse, and worthy the consideration of a wise man. But of this no more, for though I love civility, yet I hate severe censures: I'll to my own art, and I doubt not but at yonder tree I shall catch a *Chub*, and then we'll turn to an honest cleanly Hostess, that I know right well, rest our selves there, and dress it for our dinner.

*Venat.*

*Venat.* Oh Sir, a *Chub* is the worst Fish that swimmes, I hoped for a *Trout* to my dinner.

*Pisc.* Trust me, Sir, there is not a likely place for a *Trout* hereabout, and we staid so long to take our leave of your Huntsmen this morning, that the Sun is got so high, and shines so clear, that I will not undertake the catching of a *Trout* till evening; and though a *Chub* be by you and many others reckoned the worst of fish, yet you shall see I'll make it a good Fish, by dressing it.

*Ven.* Why, how will you dress him?

*Pisc.* Ile tell you when I have caught him. Look you here Sir, do you see? (but you must stand very close) there lye upon the top of the water in this very hole twenty *Chubs*, Ile catch only one, and that shall be the biggest of them all: and that I will do so, Ile hold you twenty to one and you shall see it done.

*Venat.* I marry Sir, now you talk like an Artist, and Ile say you are one, when I shall see you perform what you say you can do; but I yet doubt it.

*Pisc.* You shall not doubt me long, for you shall see me do it presently: look, the biggest of these *Chubs* has had some bruise upon his tail, by a Pike or some other accident, and that looks like a white spot; that very *Chub* I mean to put into your hands presently; sit you but down in

the shade, and stay but a little while, and Ile warrant you I'll bring him to you.

*Venat.* Ile sit down and hope well, because you seem to be so confident.

*Pisc.* Look you Sir, there is a tryal of my skill, there he is, that very *Chub* that I shewed you with the white spot on his tail ; and Ile be as certain to make him a good dish of meat, as I was to catch him. Ile now lead you to an honest Alehouse where we shall find a cleanly room, *Lavender* in the windows, and twenty *Ballads* stuck about the wall ; there my Hostis (which I may tell you, is both cleanly, and handsome, and civil) hath drest many a one for me, and shall now dresse it after my fashion, and I warrant it good meat.

*Ven.* Come Sir, with all my heart, for I begin to be hungry, and long to be at it, and indeed to rest my self too ; for though I have walk'd but four miles this morning, yet I begin to be weary ; yesterdayes hunting hangs stil upon me.

*Pisc.* Well Sir, and you shall quickly be at rest, for yonder is the house I meant to bring you to.

Come Hostis, how do you ? Will you first give us a cup of your best drink, and then drest this *Chub*, as you drest my last, when I and my friend were here about eight or ten dayes ago ? but you must do me one courtesie, it must be done instantly.

*Host.*

*Host.* I will do it, Mr. *Piscator*, and with all the speed I can.

*Pisc.* Now Sir, has not my *Host* is made hast ? and does not the fish look lovely ?

*Ven.* Both, upon my word, Sir, and therefore lets say grace and fall to eating of it.

*Pisc.* Wel Sir, how do you like it ?

*Ven.* Trust me, 'tis as good meat as I ever tasted : now let me thank you for it, drink to you, and beg a courtesie of you ; but it must not be deny'd me.

*Pisc.* What is it I pray Sir ? you are so modest, that me thinks I may promise to grant it before it is ask'd.

*Ven.* Why Sir, it is that from henceforth you will allow me to call you *Master*, and that really I may be your Scholer, for you are such a companion, and have so quickly caught, and so excellently cook'd this fish, as makes me ambitious to be your scholer.

*Pisc.* Give me your hand; from this time forward I will be your Master, and teach you as much of this Art as I am able ; and will, as you desire me, tell you somewhat of the nature of most of the Fish that we are to Angle for, and I am sure I both can and will tell you more then any common *Angler* yet knowes.

## CHAP. III.

*How to fish for, and to dresse the Chavender  
or Chub.*

*Pisc.* **T**He *Chub*, though he eat well thus drest, yet as he is usually drest, he does not: he is objected against, not only for being full of small forked bones, disperst through all his body, but that he eats watrish, and that the flesh of him is not firm but short and tastelesse. The French esteem him so mean, as to call him *Un villan*; nevertheless he may be so drest as to make him very good meat; as namely, if he be a large Chub, then dresse him thus:

*First scale him, and then wash him clean, and then take out his guts; and to that end, make the hole as little and near to his gills as you may conveniently, and especially make clean his throat from the grass and weeds that are usually in it (for if that be not very clean, it will make him to taste very sour) having so done, put some sweet herbs into his belly, and then tye him with two or three splinters to a spit, and roast him, basted often with vinegar, or rather verjuice and butter, with good store of salt mixt with it.*

Being thus drest, you will find him a much better



better dish of meat than you, or most folk, even then Anglers themselves do imagine; for this dries up the fluid watry humor with which all *Chubs* do abound.

But take this rule with you, That a *Chub* newly taken and newly drest, is so much better than a *Chub* of a dayes keeping after he is dead, that I can compare him to nothing so fitly as to Cherries newly gathered from a tree, and others that have been bruised and layen a day or two in water. Being thus used and drest presently, and not washt after he is gutted, (for note that lying long in water, and washing the bloud out of the Fish after they be gutted, abates much of their sweetnesse) you will find the *Chub* to be such meat as will recompence your labour.

Or you may dresse the *Charvender* or *Chub* thus:

When you have scaled him, and cut off his tail and fins, and washed him very clean, then chine or slit him through the middle, as a salt fish is usually cut, then give him three or four cuts or scotches with your knife, and broil him on Char-cole or Wood-cole that are free from smoke, and all the time he is a troyling baste him with the best sweet butter, and good store of salt mixt with it; and to this adde a little Time cut exceeding small, or bruised into the butter. The Cheven thus drest hath the watrie taste taken away, for which so many except against him.

him. Thus was the Cheven drest that you liked so well, and commended so much. But note again, that if this Chub that you ate of had been kept till to morrow, he had not been worth a rush. And remember that his throat be very clean, I say very clean, and his bodie not washed after he is gutted.

Wel Scholer, you see what pains I have taken to recover the lost credit of the poor despised *Chub*. And now I will give you some rules how to catch him; and I am glad to enter you into the Art of fishing by catching a *Chub*, for there is no fish better to enter a young Angler, he is so easily caught, but then it must be this particular way.

Go to the same hole in which I caught my *Chub*, where, in most hot daies you will find a dozen or twenty Chevens floating near the top of the water, get two or three Grasshoppers as you go over the meadow, and get secretly behind the tree, and stand as free from motion as is possible, then put a Grasshopper on your hook, and let your hook hang a quarter of a yard short of the water, to which end you must rest your rod on some bough of the tree, and it is likely the Chubs will sink down towards the bottom of the water at the shadow of your Rod, (for a Chub is the fear-fullest of fishes,) and will do so if but a bird flies over him, and makes the least shadow on the

the water : but they will presently rise up to the top again, and there lie soaring till some shadow affrights them again : when they lie upon the top of the water, look out the best Chub, which you setting your self in a fit place, may very easily see, and move your Rod as softly as a Snail moves, to that Chub you intend to catch ; let your bait fall gently upon the water three or four inches before him, and he will infallibly take the bait, and you will be as sure to catch him : for he is one of the leather-mouth'd Fishes, of which a hook does scarce ever lose his hold : and therefore give him play enough before you offer to take him out of the water. Go your way presently, take my rod, and do as I bid you, and I will sit down and mend my tackling till you return back.

*Ven.* Truly, my loving Master, you have offered me as faire as I could wish. Ile go and oblerve your directions.

Look you, Master, what I have done, that which joies my heart, caught just such another *Chub* as yours was.

*Pisc.* Marrie, and I am glad of it : I am like to have a towardly Scholer of you. I now see, that with advice and practice you will make an *Angler* in a short time. Have but a love to it and ile warrant you.

*Venat.* But Master, What if I could not have found a *Grasshopper* ?

*Pisc.* Then I may tell you, that a *black snail*, with his belly slit, to shew his white; or a piece of soft *cheese* will usually do as well: nay, sometimes a *worm*, or any kind of *fly*, as the *Ant-fly*, the *Flesh-fly* or *Wall-fly*, or the *Dor* or *Beetle*, (which you may find under a Cow-turd) or a *Bob*, which you will find in the same place, and in time will be a Beetle, it is a short white worm, like to, and bigger then a Gentle, or a *Cod-worm*, or a *Cafe-worm*, any of these will do very well to Fish in such a manner. And after this manner you may catch a *Trow* in a hot evening: when as you walk by a Brook, and shall see or hear him leap at flies, then if you get a *Grashopper*, put it on your hook, with your line about two yards long, standing behinde a bush or tree where his hole is, and make your bait stir up and down on the top of the water; you may, if you stand close be sure of a bit, but not sure to catch him, for he is not a leather-mouthed Fish: and after this manner you may Fish for him with almost any kind of live flie, but especially with a *Grashopper*.

*Venat.* But before you go further, I pray good Master, what mean you by a leather-mouthed Fish?

*Pisc.* By a leather-mouthed Fish, I mean such as have their teeth in their throat, as the *Chub* or *Cheven*, and so the *Barbel*, the *Gudgeon* and *Carp*, and divers others have; and the hook being

being stuck into the leather or skin of such Fish does very seldom or never lose its hold : But on the contrary, a *Pike*, a *Pearch* or *Trout*, and so some other Fish which have not their teeth in their throats, but in their mouthes, (which you shall observe to be very full of bones, and the skin very thin, and little of it :) I say, of these Fish the hook never takes so sure hold, but you often lose the Fish unless he have gorg'd it.

*Ven.* I thank you good Master for this observation ; but now what shall be done with my *Chub* or *Cheven*, that I have caught ?

*Pisc.* Marrie Sir, it shall be given away to some poor body, for Ile warrant you Ile give you a *Trout* for your supper : and it is good beginning of your Art to offer your first fruits to the poor, who will both thank God and you for it, which I see by your silence you seem to consent to. And for your willingness to part with it so charitably, I will also teach you more concerning *Chub*-Fishing : you are to note, that in *March* and *April* he is usually taken with wormes ; in *May*, and *June* and *July* he he will bite at any fly, or at cherries, or at *Bee-tles* with their legs and wings cut off, or at any kind of *Snail*, or at the black *Bee* that breeds in clay walls ; and he never refuses a *Grashopper* on the top of a swift stream, nor at the bottom the young *humble-bee* that breeds in long grasse, and

and are ordinarily found by the Mower of it. In *August*, and in the cooler moneths a yellow *paste*, made of the strongest cheefe, and pound-  
ed in a Morter with a little butter and saffron (so much of it as being beaten small will turn it to a lemmon colour.); And some make a paste for the Winter moneths, at which time the Chub is accounted best (for then it is observed, that the forked bones are lost or turned into a kind of gristle, (especially if he be baked) with a paste made of cheefe and Turpentine; he will bite also at a Minnow or Penk as a Trout will: of which I shall tell you more hereafter, and at divers other baits. But take this for a rule, that in hot weather he is to be fisht for towards the mid-water, or nearer the top; and in colder weather nearer the bottom. And if you Fish for him on the top, with a Beetle or any *fly*, then be sure to let your line be very long, and to keep out of sight. And having told you that his Spawne is excellent, and that the head of a large Cheven, the throat being well washt is the best part of him, I will say no more of this Fish at the present, but wish you may catch the next you Fish for.

And now my next obsetvation and direction shall be concerning the *Trout* (which I love to angle for above any Fish) but lest you may judge me too nice in urging to have the Chub drest so presently after he is taken, I will commend



mend to your consideration how curious former times have been in the like kind.

You shall read in *Seneca* his Natural Questions (*Lib. 3. cap. 17.*) that the Ancients were so curious in the newness of their Fish, that that seemed not new enough that was not put alive into the guests hand; and he saies that to that end, they did usually keep them living in glass-bottels in their Dining rooms; and they did glory much in their entertaining of friends to have that Fish taken from under their table alive, that was instantly to be fed upon. And he saies, they took a great pleasure to see their Mulletts change to severall colours when they were dying. But enough of this, for I doubt I have stayd too long from giving you some observations of the *Trom*, and how to Fish for him, which shall take up the next of my spare time.

---



## CHAP. IV.

*Observations of the nature and breeding of the Trout, and how to Fish for him. And the Milk-maids Song.*

*Pisc.*

**T**He Trout is a Fish highly valued, both in this and forraign Nations ; he may be justly said, (as the old Poets said of Wine, and we English say of Venison) to be a generous Fish : a Fish that is so like the Buck, that he also has his seasons, for it is observed, that he comes in and goes out of season with the Stag and Buck. Gesner saies, his name is of a Germane off-spring, and saies, he is a Fish that feeds clean and purely, in the swiftest streams, and on the hardest gravel ; and that he may justly contend with all fresh water-Fish, as the Mullet may with all Sea-Fish for precedencie and daintiness of taste, and that being in right season, the most dainty palates have allowed precedencie to him.

And before I go farther in my Discourse, let me tell you, that you are to observe, that as there be some *barren Does*, that are good in Summer, so there be some *barren Trouts* that are good in winter ; but there are not many that are so, for usually they be in their perfection

fection in the moneth of *May*, and decline with the *Buck*. Now you are to take notice, that in severall Countries, as in *Germany* and in other parts, compar'd to ours, Fish do differ much in their bignesse, and shape, and other waies, and so do *Trouts*; it is well known that in the Lake *Lemon*, (the Lake of *Geneva*,) there are *Trouts* taken of three Cubits long, as is affirmed by *Gesner*, a Writer of good credit: and *Mercator* saies, the *Trouts* that are taken in the Lake of *Geneva*, are a great part of the Merchandize of that famous City. And you are further to know, that there be certain waters that breed *Trouts*, remarkable, both for their number and smalness. I know a little Brook in *Kent* that breeds them to a number incredible, and you may take them twentie or fortie in an hour, but none greater then about the size of a *Gudgion*: There are also in divers rivers, specially that relate to, or be near to the Sea, (as *Winchester*, or the *Thames* about *Windsor*) a little Trout called a *Samlet* or *Skegger Trout* (in both which places I have caught twentie or fortie at a standing) that will bite as fast and as freely as *Minnowes*; these be by some taken to be young *Salmons*, but in those waters they never grow to be bigger then a *Herring*.

There is also in *Kent*, near to *Canterbury*, a trout, (called there a *Fordidge trout*) a trout (that

bears the name of the Town where it is usually caught) that is accounted the rarest of Fish, many of them near the bigness of a *Salmon*, but known by their different colour, and in their best season cut very white; and none of these have been known to be caught with an Angle, unless it were one that was caught by Sir *George Hastings*, (an excellent Angler, and now with God) and he hath told me, he thought that *trout* bit not for hunger, but wantonness; and it is the rather to be believed, because both he then, and many others before him, have been curious to search into their bellies, what the food was by which they lived; and have found out nothing by which they might satisfy their curiosity.

Concerning which you are to take notice, that it is reported by good Authors, that there is a Fish that hath not any mouth, but lives by taking breath by the porings of her Gills, and feeds, and is nourished by no man knows what; and this may be believed of the *Fordidge trout*, which (as it is said of the *Stork*, that he knows his season, so he) knows his times, (I think almost his day) of coming first into that River out of the Sea, where he lives (and it is like, feeds) nine moneths of the Year, and about three in the River of *Fordidge*. And you are to note, that the Townsmen are very punctual in observing the very time of beginning to fish  
for

for them ; and boast much that their River affords a Trout that exceeds all others. And just so doth *Sussex* boast of several Fish, as namely a *Shelfey Cockle*, a *Chichester Lobster*, an *Arundel Mullet*, and an *Amerly Trout*.

And now for some confirmation of the *Fordidge Trout*, you are to know that this Trout is thought to eat nothing in the fresh water ; and it may be the better believed, because it is well known that *Swallows* which are not seen to flie in *England* for six moneths in the Year, (but about *Michaelmas* leave us for a hotter Climate ; ) yet some of them that have been left behind their fellows, have been found (many thousands at a time) in hollow trees, where they have been observed to live and sleep out the whole Winter without meat ; and so *Albertus* observes that there is one kind of *Frog* that hath her mouth naturally shut up about the end of *August*, and that she lives so all the Winter, and though it be strange to some, yet it is known to too many among us to be doubted.

View Sir  
Fra. Bacon  
exper. 899.

See Topsel  
of Frogs.

And so much for these *Fordidge trouts*, which never afford an *angler* sport, but either live their time of being in the fresh water by their meat formerly gotten in the Sea, (not unlike the *Swallow* or *Frog*) or by the vertue of the fresh water onely ; or as the birds of *Paradise*,

and the *Cumelion* are said to live by the *sun* and the *ayre*.

There is also in *Northumberland* a *trout* called a *Bull-trout*, of a much greater length and bigness than any in these Southern parts : and there is in many Rivers that relate to the Sea *Salmon-trouts*, as much different from others, both in shape and in their spots, as we see sheep differ one from another in their shape and bigness, and in the fineness of their wool : and certainly, as some pastures do breed larger sheep, so do some Rivers, by reason of the ground over which they run, breed larger *trouts*.

Now the next thing that I will commend to your consideration is, that the *trout* is of a more sudden growth than other Fish : concerning which you are also to take notice, that he lives not so long as the *Pearch* and divers other Fishes do, as *Sir Francis Bacon* hath observed in his *Historie of Life and Death*.

And next you are to take notice, that he is not like the *Crocodile*, which if he lives never so long, yet alwayes thrives till his death : but 'tis not so with the *Trout*, for after he is come to his full growth, he declines in his body, but keeps his bigness, or thrives onely in his head till his death. And you are to know, that he will about (especially before) the time of his Spawning, get almost miraculously through

*Weires*

*Weires* and *Floud-gates* against the stream, even through such high and swift places as is almost incredible. Next, that the *Trout* usually Spawns about *October* or *November*, but in some Rivers a litte sooner or latter ; which is the more observable, because most other fish Spawne in the Spring or Summer, when the Sun hath warmed both the earth and water, and made it fit for generation. And you are to note, that he continues many moneths out of season ; for it may be observed of the *Trout*, that he is like the *Buck* or the *Oxe*, that will not be fat in many months, though he go in the very same pastures that horses do which will be fat in one month ; and so you may observe, that most other Fishes recover strength, and grow sooner fat and in season then the *Trout* doth.

And next, you are to note, that till the Sun gets to such a height as to warm the earth and the water, the *Trout* is sick, and lean, and low-sie, and unwholsom : for you shall in winter find him to have a big head, and then to be lank, and thin, and lean ; at which time many of them have sticking on them Sugs, or *Trout* lice, which is a kind of a worm, in shape like a clove or pin, with a big head, and sticks close to him and sucks his moisture ; those I think the *Trout* breeds himself, and never thrives till he free himself from them, which is till warm weather comes, and then as he growes stronger,



he gets from the dead, still water, into the sharp streams, and the gravel, and there rubs off these worms or lice, and then as he grows stronger, so he gets him into swifter and swifter streames, and there lies at the watch for any flie or Minnow that comes near to him ; and he especially loves the *May-flie* which is bred of the *Cod-worm* or *Caddis* ; and these make the trout bold and lustie, and he is usually fatter and better meat at the end of that month, then at any time of the year.

Now you are to know, that it is observed, that usually the best *trouts* are either red or yellow, though some (as the *Fordidg Trout*) be white and yet good ; but that is not usuall : and it is a note observable, that the female *Trout* hath usually a lesse head, and a deeper body then the male *Trout* ; and is usually the better meat : and note that a hog back, and a little head to any fish, either *Trout*, *Salmon*, or other fish, is a sign that that fish is in season.

But yet you are to note, that as you see some Willows or Palm trees bud and blossom sooner then others do, so some *Trouts* be in some rivers sooner in season ; and as some *Hollys* or *Oaks* are longer before they cast their leaves, so are some *Trouts* in some *Rivers* longer before they go out of season.

And you are to note, that there are severall kinds of *Trouts*, though they all go under that



generall name : just as there be tame and wild *Pigeons*, and of tame there be *Croppers*, *Carriers*, *Runts*, (and too many to name) which all differ, and so do *Trouts* in their bignesse, shape and colour ; the great Kentish Hens may be an instance compared to other Hens. And doubtlesse there is a kind of small Trout, which will never thrive to be big, that breeds very many more then others do that be of a larger size ; which you may rather believe, if you consider that the little *Wren* and *Titmouse* will have twentie young at a time, when usually the noble *Hawk*, or the Musical *Thrassell* or *Black-bird* exceed not four or five.

And now I shall trie my skill to catch a Trout, and at my next walking either this evening, or to morrow morning I will give you direction how you your self shall fish for him.

*Venat.* Trust me, Master, I see now it is a harder matter to catch a *trout* then a *Chub* : for I have put on patience, and followed you this two hours, and not seen a Fish stir, neither at your Minnow nor your Worm.

*Pisc.* Well Scholer, you must indure worse luck sometime, or you will never make a good Angler. But what say you now ? there is a *trout* now, and a good one too, if I can but hold him, and two or three turnes more will tire him : Now you see he lies still, and the sleight is to land him : Reach me that Lōd-  
ing

ing Net : So (Sir) now he is mine own, what say you now ? is not this worth all my labour and your patience ?

*Venat.* On my word Master, this is a gallant Trout, what shall we do with him ?

*Pisc.* Marrie e'en eat him to supper : We'll go to my Hostis, from whence we came ; she told me, as I was going out of door, that my brother *Peter*, a good Angler and a chearful companion, had sent word he would lodge there to night, and bring a friend with him. My Hostis has two beds, and I know you and I may have the best : we'll rejoyce with my brother *Peter* and his friend, tell tales, or sing Ballads, or make a Catch, or find some harmelesse sport to content us, and passe away a little time without offence to God or man.

*Venat.* A match, good Master, lets go to that house, for the linnen looks white, and smells of Lavender, and I long to lie in a pair of sheets that smell so : lets be going, good Master, for I am hungrie again with fishing.

*Pisc.* Nay, stay a little, good Scholer, I caught my last Trout with a Worm, now I will put on a Minow and trie a quarter of an hour about yonder trees for another, and so walk towards our lodging. Look you Scholer, thereabout we shall have a bit presently, or not at all : Have with you (Sir !) on my word I have him. Oh it is a great loggerheaded

*Chub;*

*Chub*; Come, hang him upon that Willow twig, and lets be going. But turn out of the way a little, good Scholer, towards yonder high hedg: We'll sit whilst this showre falls so gently upon the teeming earth, and gives yet a sweeter smell to the lovely flowers that adorn these verdant Meadows.

Look, under that broad *Beech-tree*, I sat down when I was last this way a fishing, and the birds in the adjoining Grove seemed to have a friendly contention with an *Eccho*, with an *Eccho* whose dead voice seemed to live in a hollow cave, near to the brow of that *Primrose-hill*, there I sat viewing the silver-streams glide silently towards their center, the tempestuous Sea: yet sometimes opposed by rugged roots, and pibble stones, which broke their waves, and turned them into foam: and sometimes I beguil'd time by viewing the harmless Lambs, some leaping securely in the cool shade, whilst others sported themselves in the chearful Sun: and saw others craving comfort from the swollen Udders of their bleating Dams. As I thus sat these and other sights had so fully possess'd my soul with content, that I thought as the Poet has happily exprest it:

*I was for that time lifted above earth;  
And possess'd joies not promis'd in my birth.*

As I left this place, and entered into the next field, a second pleasure entertained me, 'twas

a handfom milk-maid, that had caſt away all care, and ſung like a *Nightingale*; her voice was good, and the Ditty fitted for it, 'twas that ſmooth ſong which was made by *Ki. Marlow*, now at leaſt fiftie years ago: and the Milk-maids Mother ſung an answer to it, which was made by *Sir Walter Raleigh* in his younger daies.

They were old faſhioned Poetrie, but choicely good, I think much better then the ſtrong lines that are now in faſhion in this critically age. Look yonder, on my word, yonder they be both a milking again, I will give her the *Chub*, and perſwade them to ſing thoſe two ſongs to us.

God ſpeed good woman, I have been a Fiſhing, and am going to *Bleak-Hall* to my bed, and having caught more Fiſh then will ſup my ſelf and my friend, I will beſtow this upon you and your daughter, for I uſe to ſell none.

*Milkw.* Marrie God requite you Sir, and we'l eat it chearfully: and if you come this way a Fiſhing two moneths hence, a grace of God Ile give you a Sillibub of new Verjuice, in a new made Hay-cock for it, and my *Mandlin* ſhall ſing you one of her beſt *Ballads*, for ſhe and I both love all *Anglers*, they be ſuch honeſt, civil, quier men; in the mean time will you drink a draught of *Red Cowes milk*, you ſhall have it freely.

*Piſc.*

*Pisc.* No, I thank you, but I pray do us a courtesie that shall stand you and your daughter in nothing, and we will think our selves still something in your debt ; it is but to sing us a Song, that was sung by you and your daughter, when I last past over this Meadow, about eight or nine daies since.

*Milk.* What Song was it, I pray ? was it, *Come shepheards deck your heards*, or, *As at noon Dulcina rested* ; or *Philida flouts me*, or *Chevie Chase* ?

*Pisc.* No, it is none of those : it is a Song that your daughter sung the first part, and you sung the answer to it.

*Milk.* O I know it now, I learn'd the first part in my golden age, when I was about the age of my poor daughter ; and the latter part, which indeed fits me best now, but two or three years ago, when the cares of the world began to take hold of me : but you shall, God willing, hear them both, and sung as well as we can, for we both love Anglers. Come *Maudlin*, sing the first part to the Gentlemen with a merrie heart, and Ile sing the second when you have done.

*The Milk-maids Song.*

*Come live with me and be my Love,  
And we will all the pleasures prove*

*That*

*That valleys, groves, or hills, or fields,  
Or woods and steepy mountains yeelds.*

*Where we will sit upon the rocks,  
And see the Shepherds feed our flocks,  
By shallow rivers, to whose falls  
Mellodious birds sing madrigals.*

*And I will make thee beds of Roses,  
And then a thousand fragrant Posies,  
A cap of Flowers, and a Kirtle  
Imbroydered all with leaves of Mirtle.*

*A Gown made of the finest wool  
Which from our pretty Lambs we pull;  
Slippers lin'd choicely for the cold,  
With buckles of the purest gold.*

*A Belt of Straw and Ivey-buds,  
With Coral clasps and Amber studs:  
And if these pleasures may thee move,  
Come live with me and be my Love.*

*Thy silver dishes for thy meate,  
As precious as the gods do eat,  
Shall on an Ivory table be  
Prepar'd each day for thee and me.*

*The Shepherds Swains shall dance and sing  
For thy delight each May morning:*



*If these delights thy mind may move;  
Then live with me and be my Love.*

*Venat.* Trust me, Master, it is a choice Song,  
and sweetly sung by honest *Maudlin*. I now  
see it was not without cause that our good  
Queen *Elizabeth* did so often with her self a  
Milk-maid all the moneth of *May*, because  
they are not troubled with cares, but sing  
sweetly all the day, and sleep securely all the  
night: and without doubt honest, innocent,  
pretty *Maudlin* does so. I'll bestow Sir *Thomas*  
*Overbury's* Milk-maids with upon her, *That she*  
*may dye in the Spring, and have good store of flowers*  
*stuck round about her winding-sheer.*

*The Milk-maids Mothers Answer.*

*If all the world and Love were young,  
And truth in every Shepherds tongue,  
These pretty pleasures might me move  
To live with thee and be thy Love.*

*But time drives flocks from field to fold  
When rivers rage, and rocks grow cold,  
And Philomel becometh dumb,  
The Rest complains of cares to come.*

*The flowers do fade, and wanton fields  
To wayward Winter reckoning yeelds.*



*A honey tongue, a heart of gall,  
Is fancies Spring, but sorrows fall.*

*Thy gowns, thy shooes, thy beds of roses,  
Thy cap, thy kirtle, and thy posies,  
Soon break, soon wither, soon forgotten,  
In folly ripe, in reason rotten.*

*Thy Belt of Straw and Iuy-buds,  
Thy Coral clasps and Amber studs,  
All these in me no means can move  
To come to thee and be thy Love.*

*What should we talk of dainties then,  
Of better meat than's fit for men?  
These are but vain: that's onely good  
Which God hath blest, and sent for food.*

*But could Youth last, and love still breed,  
Had joyes no date, nor age no need;  
Then those delights my mind might move,  
To live with thee and be thy Love.*

*Pisc.* Well sung, good Woman, I thank you,  
I'll give you another dish of Fish one of these  
dayes, and then beg another Song of you. Come  
Scholer, let *Maudlin* alone, do not you offer  
to spoil her voice. Look, yonder comes mine  
Hostels to call us to supper. How now? is my  
brother *Peter* come?

*Host.*

*Host.* Yes, and a friend with him, they are both glad to hear you are in these parts, and long to see you, and are hungrie, and long to be at supper.

## CHAP. V.

*More directions how to fish for, and how to make for the Trout an artificial Minnow and Fly; and some merriment.*

*Pisc.* **W**ell met Brother *Peter*, I heard you and a friend would lodge here to night, and that hath made me and my friend cast to lodge here too: My friend is one that would fain be a brother of the *angle*, he hath been an *angler* but this day, and I have taught him how to catch a *Chub* by *daping* with a *Grashopper*, and he hath caught a lustie one of nineteen inches long. But, I pray Brother, who is it that is your companion?

*Peter.* Brother *Piscator*, my friend is an honest Countrie-man, and his name is *Coridon*, a most downright, wittie, merrie companion that met me here purposely to eat a *trout*, and to be pleasant, and I have not yet wet my Line since I came from home: but I will fit him to morrow with a *trout* for his  
G break-

breakfast, if the weather be any thing like.

*Pisc.* Nay, brother, you shall not delay him so long, for look you, here is a *Trom*



will fill six reasonable bellies. Come Hostels, dress it presently, and get us what other meat the house will afford, and give us some of your best *Barley-wine*, the good liquor that our honest Forefathers did use to drink of, which preserved their health, and made them live so long, and to do so many good deeds.

*Peter.* On my word this *Trom* is in perfect season. Come, I thank you, and here is a hearty draught to you, and to all the brothers of the Angle wheresoever they be, and to my young brothers good fortune to morrow: I will furnish him with a Rod, if you will furnish him with the rest of the Tackling, we will set him up and make him a Fisher.

And I will tell him one thing for his encouragement,

agement, that his fortune hath made him happy to be a Scholer to such a Master; a Master that knows as much both of the nature and breeding of fish as any man: and can also tell him as well how to catch and cook them, from the *Minnow* to the *Salmon*, as any that I ever met withall.

*Pisc.* Trust me, brother *Peter*, I find my Scholer to be so futable to my own humour, which is to be free and pleasant, and civilly merrie, that my resolution is to hide nothing that I know from him. Believe me, Scholer, this is my resolution; and so here's to you a hearty draught, and to all that love us, and the honest Art of Angling.

*Ven.* Trust me, good Master, you shall not sow your seed in barren ground, for I hope to return you an increase answerable to your hopes; but however you shall find me obedient, and thankful, and serviceable to my best abilitie.

*Pisc.* 'Tis enough, honest Scholer, come lets to supper. Come my friend *Coridon* this *Trout* looks lovely, it was twentie two inches when it was taken, and the belly of it looked some part of it as yellow as a *Marigold*, and part of it as white as a lilly, and yet me thinks it looks better in this good sawce.

*Cor.* Indeed honest friend, it looks well, and tastes well, I thank you for it, and so does my

friend *Peter*, or else he is to blame.

*Pet.* Yes, and so I do, we all thank you, and when we have sup't, I will get my friend *Coridon* to sing you a Song for requital.

*Cor.* I will sing a song if any body will sing another; else, to be plain with you, *I will sing none*: I am none of those that sing for meat, but for companie: I say, 'Tis merrie in Hall, when men sing all.

*Pisc.* I'll promise you I'll sing a song that was lately made at my request by Mr. *William Basse*, one that hath made the choice Songs of the *Hunter in his careere*, and of *Tom of Bedlam*, and many others of note; and this that I will sing is in praise of Angling.

*Cor.* And then mine shall be the praise of a Countrie mans life: What will the rest sing of?

*Pet.* I will promise you I will sing another Song in praise of Angling to morrow night, for we will not part till then, but Fish to morrow, and sup together, and the next day every man leave Fishing, and fall to his businesse.

*Venat.* 'Tis a match, and I will provide you a Song or a Catch against then too, which shall give some addition of mirth to the company; for we will be civil and merrie too.

*Pisc.* 'Tis a match my Masters, lets ev'n say Grace, and turn to the fire, drink the other cup to wet our whistles, and so sing away all sad thoughts.

Come

Come on my Masters, who begins? I think it is best to draw cuts, and avoid contention.

*Pet.* It is a match. Look, the shortest cut falls to *Coridon*.

*Cor.* Well then, I will begin, for I hate contention.

CORIDONS Song.

*Oh the sweet contentment  
The country man doth find!  
high trolollie lollie loe  
high trolollie lee,  
That quiet contemplation  
possesseth all my mind:  
Then care away,  
and wend along with me.*

*For Courts are full of flattery,  
As hath too oft been tri'd;  
high trolollie lollie loe, &c.  
The City full of wantonnesse,  
and both are full of pride:  
Then care away, &c.*

*But oh the honest country man  
Speaks truly from his heart,  
high trolollie lollie loe, &c.  
His pride is in his tillage,  
his horses and his cart:  
Then care away, &c.*

*Our cloathing is good sheep skins ,  
 Gray russet for our wives ,  
 high trolollie lollie loe, &c.*

*'Tis warmth and not gay clothing  
 that doth prolong our lives :*

*Then care away, &c.*

*The ploughman, though he labor hard,  
 Yet on the Holy-Day,*

*high trolollie lollie loe, &c.*

*No Emperour so merrily  
 does passe his time away :*

*Then care away, &c.*

*To recompence our tillage ,*

*The Heavens afford us showrs ;*

*high trolollie lollie loe, &c.*

*And for our sweet refreshments  
 the earth affords us howers :*

*Then care away, &c.*

*The Cuckoe and the Nightingale*

*Full merrily do sing ,*

*high trolollie lollie loe, &c.*

*And with their pleasant roundelaies  
 bid welcome to the Spring.*

*Then care away, &c.*

*This is not half the happinesse  
 the country man enjoies ;*

*high trolollie lollie loe, &c.*

*Though*



*Though others think they have as much,  
yet he that saies so lies :*

Then come away, turn  
Country man with me.

*To: Chalkhill.*

*Pisc.* Well sung *Coridon*, this Song was sung with mettle, and it was choicely fitted to the occasion ; I shall love you for it as long as I know you : I would you were a brother of the Angle, for a companion that is chearful, and free from swearing and scurrilous discourse, is worth gold. I love such mirth as does not make friends ashamed to look upon one another next morning ; nor men (that cannot well bear it) to repent the money they spend when they be warmed with drink : and take this for a rule, You may pick out such times and such companies, that you may make your selves merrier for a little then a great deal of money ; for *'Tis the company and not the charge that makes the feast* : and such a companion you prove, I thank you for it.

But I will not complement you out of the debt that I owe you, and therefore I will begin my Song, and wish it may be as well liked.

## The Anglers Song.

*As inward love breeds outward talk,  
 The Hound some praise, and some the Hawk;  
 Some better pleas'd with private sport,  
 Use Tennis, some a Mistress court:  
 But these delights I neither wish,  
 Nor envy, while I freely fish.*

*Who hunts, doth oft in danger ride;  
 Who hawks, lures oft both far and wide;  
 Who uses games, shall often prove  
 A loser; but who falls in love,  
 Is fettered in fond Cupids snare:  
 My Angle breeds me no such care.*

*Of Recreation there is none  
 So free as Fishing is alone;  
 All other pastimes do no lesse  
 Than mind and body both possesse:  
 My hand alone my work can do,  
 So I can fish and study too.*

*I care not, I, to fish in seas,  
 Fresh rivers best my mind do please,  
 Whose sweet calm course I contemplate,  
 And seek in life to imitate:  
 In civil bounds I fain would keep,  
 And for my past offences weep.*

*And when the timorous Trout I wait  
To take, and he devours my bait,  
How poor a thing sometimes I find  
Will captivate a greedy mind:*

*And when none bite, I praise the wise,  
Whom vain allurements ne're surprise.*

*But yet though while I fish, I fast,  
I make good fortune my repast;  
And thereunto my friend invite,  
In whom I more than that delight:  
Who is more welcom to my dish,  
Then to my angle was my fish.*

*As well content no prize to take,  
As use of taken prize to make:  
For so our Lord was pleased when  
He Fishers made Fishers of men:  
Where (which is in no other game)  
A man may fish and praise his Name.*

*The first men that our Saviour dear  
Did chuse to wait upon him here,  
Blest Fishers were, and fish the last  
Food was, that he on earth did taste.*

*I therefore strive to follow those;  
Whom he to follow him hath chose.*

*Cor.* Well sung brother, you have paid your debt in good coine, we Anglers are all behold-  
ing to the good man that made this Song.  
Come Hostess, give us more Ale, and lets drink  
to him.

And now lets every one go to bed that we  
may rise early ; but first lets pay our reckoning,  
for I will have nothing to hinder me in the  
morning, for my purpose is to prevent the Sun-  
rising.

*Pet.* A match : Come *Coridon*, you are to be  
my Bed-fellow : I know, brother, you and  
your Scholer will lie together ; but where shall  
we meet to morrow night ? for my friend *Co-*  
*ridon* and I will go up the water towards *Ware*.

*Pisc.* And my Scholer and I will go down  
towards *Waltam*.

*Cor.* Then lets meet here, for here are fresh  
sheets that smell of *Lavender*, and I am sure we  
cannot expect better meat, or better usage in  
any place.

*Pet.* 'Tis a match. Good night to every body.

*Pisc.* And so say I.

*Venat.* And so say I.

*Pisc.* Good morrow good Hostess, I see my  
brother *Peter* is still in bed ; Come give my  
Scholer and me a Mornings-drink, and a bit of  
meat to breakfast, and be sure to get a good  
dish of meat or two against supper, for we shall  
come

come home as hungry as Hawks. Come Scholar, lets be going.

*Venat.* Well now, good Master, as we walk towards the River give me direction, according to your promise, how I shall fish for a Trout.

*Pisc.* My honest Scholar, I will take this very convenient opportunity to do it.

The Trout is usually caught with a worm or a Minnow, (which some call a *Penke*) or with a flie, viz. either a natural or an artificial flie: concerning which three I will give you some observations and directions.

And first for Worms: Of these there be very many sorts, some bred onely in the earth, as the *Earth-worm*; others of or amongst Plants, as the *Dug-worm*; and others bred either out of excrements, or in the bodies of living creatures, as in the horns of Sheep or Deer; or some of dead flesh, as the *maggot* or *genle*, and others.

Now these be most of them particularly good for particular Fishes: but for the Trout, the *dew-worm*, (which some also call the *Lob-worm*) and the *Brandling* are the chief, and especially the first for a great Trout, and the later for a less. There be also of *Lob-worms* some called *squirrel-tayles*, (a worm that has a red head, a streak down the back, and a broad tail) which are noted to be the best, because they are the roughest and most lively, and live longest

gest in the water : for you are to know, that a dead worm is but a dead bait, and like to catch nothing, compared to a lively, quick, stirring worm : And for a *Brandling*, he is usually found in an old dunghil, or some very rotten place near to it : but most usually in cow-dung or hogs-dung, rather then horse-dung, which is somewhat too hot and drie for that worm. But the best of them are to be found in the bark of the Tanners, which they cast up in heaps after they have used it about their leather.

There are also divers other kinds of worms, which for colour and shape alter even as the ground out of which they are got, as the *marsh-worms*, the *tag-tail*, the *flag-worms*, the *dock-worms*, the *oak-worm*, the *gilt-tayle*, the *twachel* or *lob-worm*, (which of all other is the most excellent bait for a *Salmon*) and too many to name, even as many sorts, as some think there be of several hearbs or shrubs, or of several kinds of birds in the aire ; of which I shall say no more, but tell you, that what worms soever you Fish with, are the better for being long kept before they be used ; and in case you have not been so provident, then the way to cleanse and scour them quickly, is to put them all night in water, if they be *Lob-worms*, and then put them into your bag with fennel : but you must not put your *Brandling* above an hour in water, and then put them into fennel for sudden use : but if  
you



you have time, and purpose to keep them long, then they be best preserved in an earthen pot with good store of *Mosse*, which is to be fresh every three or four dayes in Summer, and every week or eight daies in Winter ; or at least the mosse taken from them, and clean washed, and wrung betwixt your hands till it be drie, and then put it to them again. And when your worms, especially the Brandling begins to be sick, and lose of his bignesse, then you may recover him, by putting a little milk or cream (about a spoonfull in a day) into them by drops on the mosse ; and if there be added to the cream an egge beaten and boiled in it, then it will both fatten and preserve them long. And note that when the *knot* which is near to the middle of the *brandling* begins to swell, then he is sick, and if he be not well look'd to is near dying. And for mosse, you are to note, that there be divers kinds of it, which I could name to you, but will onely tell you, that that which is likest a *Bucks horn* is the best, except it be white mosse, which grows on some heaths, and is hard to be found. And note, that in a very drie time, when you are put to an extremity for worms, Walnut-tree leaves squeez'd into water, or salt in water, to make it bitter or salt, and then that water poured on the ground, where you shall see worms are used to rise in the night, will make them to appear above ground presently.

And



And now, I shall shew you how to bait your hook with a worm, so as shall prevent you from much trouble, and the loss of many a hook too; when you Fish for a *Trout* with a running line: that is to say, when you fish for him by hand at the ground, I will direct you in this as plainly as I can, that you may not mistake.

*Suppose it be a big Lob-worm, put your hook into him somewhat above the middle, and out again a little below the middle: having so done, draw your worm above the arming of your hook, (but note that at the entering of your hook it must not be at the head-end of the worm, but at the taile-end of him, that the point of your hook may come out toward the head-end) and having drawn him above the arming of your hook, then put the point of your hook again into the very head of the worm, till it come near to the place where the point of the hook first came out: and then draw back that part of the worm that was above the shank or arming of your hook, and so fish with it. And if you mean to fish with two worms, then put the second on before you turn back the hook's-head of the first worm, you cannot lose above two or three worms before you attain to what I direct you; and having attain'd it, you will find it very useful, and thank me for it: For you will run on the ground without tangleing.*

Now for the *Minnow* or *Penk*, he is easily found and caught in *March*, or in *April*, for then he appears in the Rivers, but Nature hath taught him to shelter and hide himself in the  
Winter

Winter in ditches that be near to the River, and there both to hide and keep himself warm in the mud or in the weeds, which rot not so soon as in a running River, in which place if he were in Winter, the distempered Floods that are usually in that season, would suffer him to take no rest, but carry him head-long to Mill's and Weires to his confusion. And of these *Minnows*, first you are to know, that the biggest size is not the best; and next, that the middle size and the whitest are the best: and then you are to know, that your *Minnow* must be so put on your hook that it must turn round when 'tis drawn against the stream, and that it may turn nimble, you must put it on a big-sized hook as I shall now direct you, which is thus. Put your hook in at his mouth and out at his gill, then having drawn your hook 2 or 3 inches beyond or through his gill, put it again into his mouth, and the point and beard out at his taile, and then tie the hook and his taile about very neatly with a white thred, which will make it the apter to turn quick in the water: that done pull back that part of your line which was slack vvhhen you put your hook into the *Minnow* the second time. I say pull that part of it back so that it shall fasten the head, so that the body of the *Minnow* shall be almost streight on your hook; this done, trie how it will turn by drayving it cross the vvater or against a stream,

stream, and if it do not turn nimble, then turn the tail a little to the right or left hand, and trie againe till it turne quick ; for if not , you are in danger to catch nothing, for know that it is impossible that it should turn too quick: And you are yet to know, that in case you want a *Minnow*, then a small *Loch*, or a *Stickle-bag*, or any other small Fish will serve as well: And you are yet to know, that you may salt, and by that means keep them fit for use three or four daies or longer, and that of salt, bay salt is the best.

And here let me tell you, what many old Anglers know right well, that at some time, and in some waters a *Minnow* is not to be got, and therefore let me tell you, I have (which I will shew to you) an *artificial Minnow*, that will catch a Trout as well as an *Artificial Flie*, and it was made by a handsome Woman that had a fine hand and a live minnow lying by her: the mould or body of the minnow was cloth, and wrought upon or over it thus with a needle: the back of it with very sad French green silk, and paler green silk towards the belly, shadowed as perfectly as you can imagine, just as you see a *Minnow*; the belly was wrought also with a needle, and it was a part of it white silk, and another part of it with silver thred, the taile and fins were of a quill, which was shaven thin, the eyes were of two little black beads, and the head was so shadowed, and all of it so curiously wrought, and so exactly

exactly dissembled, that it would beguile any sharpe sighted Trout in a swift stream. And this Minnow I will now skew you, and if you like it, lend it you, to have two or three made by it, for they be easily carryed about an Angler, and be of extellent use; for note, that a large Trout will come as fiercely at a Minnow, as the highest mettle Hawk doth seize on a Partridg, or a Greyhound on a Hare. I have been told, that 160 minnows have been found in a Trouts belly, either the Trout had devoured so many, or the Miller that gave it a friend of mine had forced them down his throat after he had taken him.

Now for Flies, which is the third bait where-with Trouts are usually taken. You are to know, that there are as many sorts of Flies as there be of Fruits: I will name you but some of them, as the *dun-flye*, the *stone-flye*, the *red-flye*, the *moor-flye*, the *tawny-flye*, the *swell-flye*, the *cloudy*, or *blackish flie*, the *flag-flye*, the *vine-flye*: there be of flies, *Caterpillars*, and *Canker-flyes*, and *Bear-flyes*, and indeed too many either for me to name. or for you to remember: and their breeding is so various and wonderfull, that I might easily amaze my self, and tire you in a relation of them.

And yet I will exercise your promised patience by saying a little of the *Caterpillar* or the *Palmer-flye* or *worm*, that by them you may guesse what a work it were in a Discourse but

to run over those very many flies, worms, and little living creatures with which the Sun and Summer adorn and beautifie the River banks and meadows ; both for the recreation and contemplation of us Anglers, and which (I think) my self enjoy more then any other man that is not of my profession.

*Pliny* holds an opinion, that many have their birth or being from a dew that in the Spring falls upon the leaves of trees ; and that some kinds of them are from a dew left upon herbs or flowers ; and others from a dew left upon Colworts or Cabbages : All which kinds of dewes being thickned and condensed, are by the Suns generative heat most of them hatch'd, and in three daies made living creatures ; and these of severall shapes and colours; some being hard and tough, some smooth and soft ; some are horned in their head, some in their tail, some have none : some have hair, some none : some have sixteen feet, some lesse, and some have

*In his history of Serpents.*

none, but (as our *Topsel* hath with great diligence observed) those which have none, move upon the earth or upon broad leaves, their motion being not unlike to the waves of the sea. Some of them he also observes to be bred of the eggs of other Caterpillers, and that those in their time turne to be *Butter-flies* : and again, that their eggs turne the following yeer to be *Caterpillers*.

And

And som affirm, that every plant has his particular flye or Caterpillar, which it breeds and feeds. I have seen, and may therefore affirm it : a green Caterpillar, or worm, as big as a small Peascod, which had fourteen legs, eight on the belly, four under the neck, and two neer the tail. It was found on a hedge of Privet, and was taken thence, and put into a large Box, and a little branch or two of Privet put to it, on which I saw it feed as sharply as a dog gnawes a bone : it lived thus five or six daies, and thrived, and changed the colour two or three times, but by some neglect in the keeper of it, it then died and did not turn to a flye : but if it had lived, it had doubtlesse turned to one of those flies that some call flies of prey, which those that walk by the Rivers may in Summer, see fasten on smaller flies, and I think make them their food. And 'tis observable that as there be these flies of prey which be very large, so there be others very little, created I think onely to feed them, and bred out of I know not what ; whose life, they say, Nature intended not to exceed an hour, and yet that life is thus made shorter by other flies, or accident.

'Tis endless to tell you what the curious searchers into Natures productions have observed of these Worms and Flies : But yet I shall tell you what *Aldrovandus*, our *Topsel*, and others



say of the *Palmer-worm* or *Caterpillar*, That whereas others content themselves to feed on particular herbs or leaves, (for most think those very leaves that gave them life and shape, give them a particular feeding and nourishment, and that upon them they usually abide) yet he observes, that this is called a *pilgrim* or *palmer-worm*, for his very wandering life and various food; not contenting himself (as others do) with any one certain place for his abode, nor any certain kind of herb or flower for his feeding; but will boldly and disorderly wander up and downe, and not endure to be kept to a diet, or fixt to a particular place.

Nay, the very colour of *Caterpillars* are, as one has observed, very elegant and beautiful: I shall (for a taste of the rest) describe one of them, which I will sometime the next moneth shew you feeding on a Willow tree, and you shall find him punctually to answer this very description; *His lips and mouth somewhat yellow, his eyes black as Jet, his forehead purple, his feet and hinder parts green, his tayl two forked and black, the whole body stain'd with a kind of red spots which run along the neck and shoulder-blade, not unlike the form of Saint Andrew's Crosse, or the letter X, made thus crosse-wise, and a white line drawn down his back to his tayl; all which adde much beauty to his whole body.* And it is to me observable, that at a fixed age this *Caterpillar* gives over to

eat



eat, and towards Winter comes to be covered over with a strange shell or crust called an *Anrelia*, and so lives a kind of dead life, without eating all the Winter; and (as others of several kinds turn to be several kinds of flies and vermin the Spring following) so this *Caterpillar* then turns to be a *painted Butter-flye*.

*View Sir  
Fra. Bacon  
exper. 728.  
& 90. in  
his Natural  
History.*

Come, come my Scholer, you see the River stops our morning walk, and I will also here stop my discourse, onely as we sit down under this *Honey-suckle* hedge, whilst I look a Line to fit the Rod that our brother *Peter* hath lent you, I shall for a little confirmation of what I have said, repeat the observation of *Du Bartas*:

*God not contented to each kind to give,  
And to infuse the vertue generative,  
By his wise power made many creatures breed  
Of livelesse bodies without Venus deed.*

6. Day of  
*Du Bartas.*

*So the cold humour breeds the Salamander,  
Who (in effect) like to her births commander,  
With child with hundred winters, with her touch  
Quencheth the fire though glowing ne're so much.*

*So in the fire in burning furnace springs  
The Fly Perausta with the flaming wings;  
Without the fire it dyes, in it it joyes,  
Living in that which all things else destroys.*

View Gerh.  
Herbal and  
Camden.

So slow Boötes underneath him sees  
In th' Icy Islands gossings hatcht of trees,  
Whose fruitful leaves falling into the water,  
Are turn'd ('tis known) to living fowls soon after.

So rotten planks of broken ships do change  
To Barnacles. O transformation strange!  
'Twas first a green tree, then a broken hull,  
Lately a muskromme, now a flying Gull.

*Venat.* O my good Master, this morning walk has been spent to my great pleasure and wonder: but, I pray, when shall I have your direction how to make artificial flies, like to those that the *Trout* loves best? and also how to use them?

*Pisc.* My honest Scholer, it is now past five of the Clock, we will fish till nine, and then go to breakfast: Go you to yonder *Sycamore tree*, and hide your Bottle of drink under the hollow root of it; for about that time, and in that place, we will make a brave breakfast with a piece of powdered Bief, and a Radish or two that I have in my Fish-bag; we shall, I warrant you, make a good, honest, wholesome, hungry breakfast, and I will give you direction for the making and using of your flie: and in the mean time there is your Rod and Line, and my advice is, that you fish as you see me do,  
and

and let's try which can catch the first Fish.

*Venat.* I thank you Master, I will observe and practice your direction as far as I am able.

*Pisc.* Look you Scholer, you see I have hold of a good Fish: I now see it is a Trout, I pray, put that Net under him, and touch not my line, for if you do, then we break all. Well done Scholer; I thank you.

Now for another. Trust me I have another bite: come Scholer, come lay down your Rod, and help me to land this as you did the other. So, now we shall be sure to have a good dish of Fish for supper.

*Venat.* I am glad of that, but I have no fortune: sure, Master, yours is a better Rod, and better tackling.

*Pisc.* Nay, then take mine, and I will fish with yours. Look you, Scholer, I have another; come, do as you did before. And now I have a bite at another: Oh me! he has broke all; there's half a line and a good hook lost.

*Venat.* Master, I can neither catch with the first nor second Angle: I have no fortune.

*Pisc.* Look you, Scoler, I have yet another: and now having caught three brace of Trouts, I will tell you a short Tale as we walk towards our breakfast: *A Scholer (a Preacher I should say) that was to preach to procure the approbation of a Parish, that he might be their Lecturer, had got from his Fellow-pupil the copy of a sermon that was*

first preached with a great commendation by him that composed and preach'd it ; and though the borrower of it preach'd it word for word, as it was at first, yet it was utterly disliked as it was preached by the second : which the sermon-borrower complained of to the lender of it, and was thus answered ; I lent you indeed my Fiddle, but not my Fiddlestick ; for you are to know, that every one cannot make musick with my words, which are fitted for my own mouth. And so, my Scholer, you are to know, that as the ill pronounciation or ill accenting of words in a Sermon spoils it, so the ill carriage of your line, or not fishing even to a foot in a right place, makes you lose your labour : and you are to know, that though you have my *Fiddle*, that is, my very Rod and tacklings with which you see I catch Fish ; yet you have not my *Fiddlestick*, that is, you yet have not skill to know how to carry your hand and line, nor how to guide it to a right place : and this must be taught you (for you are to remember I told you, Angling is an Art) either by practice, or a long observation, or both. But take this for a rule, when you fish for a Trout with a Worme, let your line have so much, and not more Lead than will fit the stream in which you fish ; that is to say, more in a great troublesome stream than in a smaller that is quieter ; as near as may be, so much as will sink the bait to the bottom, and keep it still in motion, and not more.

But now lets say Grace and fall to breakfast : what say you, Scholer, to the providence of an old angler ? does not this meat taste well ? and was not this place well chosen to eat it ? for this Sycamore tree will shade us from the Suns heat.

*Ven.* All excellent good, and my stomach excellent good too. And I now remember and find that true which devout *Lessius* saies, *That poor men, and those that fast often, have much more pleasure in eating then rich men and gluttons, that always feed before their stomachs are empty of their last meat, and so rob themselves of that pleasure that hunger brings to poor men.* And I do seriously approve of that saying of yours, *That you had rather be a civil well-grounded, temperate poor Angler, then a drunken Lord.* But I hope there is none such, however I am certain of this, that I have been at many very costly dinners that have not afforded me half the content that this has done, for which I thank God and you.

And now good Master, proceed to your promised direction for making and ordering my Artificial flie.

*Pisc.* My honest Scholer, I will do it, for it is a debt due unto you by my promise : and because you shall not think your self more engaged to me then indeed you really are, I will freely give you such directions as were lately given to me by an ingenuous brother of the Angle,

Angle, an honest man, and a most excellent *Flie-fisher*.

You are to note, that there are twelve kinds of Artificial made Flies to Angle with upon the top of the water, (note by the way, that the fittest season of using these is in a blustering windie day, when the waters are so troubled that the natural flie cannot be seen, or rest upon them.) The first is the *dun-fly* in *March*, the body is made of *dun wool*, the wings of the Partridges feathers. The second, is another *dun-fly*, the body of *black wool*, and the wings made of the black Drakes feathers, and of the feathers under his taile. The third is the *stone-fly* in *April*, the body is made of *black wool* made yellow under the wings, and under the taile, and so made with wings of the Drake. The fourth is the *ruddy-fly* in the beginning of *May*, the body made of red wool wrapt about with black silk, and the feathers are the wings of the Drake, with the feathers of a red Capon also, which hang dangling on his sides next to the tail. The fifth is the *yellow* or *greenish-fly* (in *May* likewise) the body made of *yellow wool*, and the wings made of the red cocks hackel or tail. The sixth is, the *black-fly* in *May* also, the body made of *black-wool* and lapt about with the herle of a Peacocks tail; the wings are made of the wings of a brown Capon with his blue feathers in his head. The seventh is the  
sad



*sad yellow-fly* in *June*, the body is made of *black-wool*, with a yellow list on either side, and the wings taken off the wings of a Buzzard, bound with *black braked hemp*. The eight is the *moo-rish-fly* made with the body of *duskyish wooll*, and the wings made of the *blackish mail* of the Drake. The ninth is the *tawny-fly*, good untill the middle of *June*; the body made of *tawny-wool*, the wings made contrary one against the other, made of the *whitish mail* of the wild Drake. The tenth is the *Wasp-fly* in *July*, the body made of *black-wool*, lapt about with *yellow silk*, the wings made of the feathers of the Drake, or of the Buzzard. The eleventh is, the *shell-fly*, good in mid *July*, the body made of *greenish wool*, lapt about with the herle of a Peacocks tail; and the wings made of the wings of the Buzzard. The twelfth is the *dark Drake-fly*, good in *August*, the body made with *black-wool*, lapt about vvith *black silk*; his vvings are made vvith the maile of the *black Drake*, vvith a *black head*. Thus have you a Jury of flies likely to betray and condemn all the Trouts in the River.

I shall next give you some other Directions for *Flie-fishing*, such as are given by *Mr. Thomas Barker*, a Gentleman that hath spent much time in *Fishing*: but I shall do it vvith a little variation.

First, let your Rod be light, and very gentle,



I take the best to be of two pieces, and let not your Line exceed (especially for three or four links next to the hook) I say, not exceed three or four hairs at the most, though you may Fish a little stronger above in the upper part of your Line: but if you can attain to Angle with one hair, you shall have more rises, and catch more Fish. Now you must be sure not to cumber yourself with too long a Line, as most do: and before you begin to angle, cast to have the wind on your back, and the Sun (if it shines) to be before you, and to Fish down the stream; and carrie the point or top of your Rod downward, by which means the shadow of yourself, and Rod too will be the least offensive to the Fish, for the sight of any shade amazes the Fish, and spoils your sport, of which you must take a great care.

In the middle of *March* (till which time a man should not in honestie catch a Trout) or in *April*, if the weather be dark, or a little windie or cloudie, the best Fishing is with the *Palmer-worm*, of which I last spoke to you, but of these there be divers kinds, or at least of divers colours; these and the *May-fly* are the ground of all Flie-Angling, which are to be thus made.

First, you must arme your hook with the line in the inside of it, then take your Scissers, and cut so much of a brown Malards feather as in  
your

your own reason will make the wings of it, you having withall regard to the bigness or litteness of your hook, then lay the outmost part of your feather next to your hook, then the point of your feather next the shank of your hook; and having so done, whip it three or four times about the hook with the same Silk, with which your hook was armed, and having made the Silk fast, take the hackel of a *Cock* or *Capons* neck, or a *Plovers* top, which is usually better: take off the one side of the feather, and then take the hackel, Silk or Crewel, Gold or Silver thred, make these fast at the bent of the hook, that is to say, below your arming; then you must take the hackel, the Silver or Gold thred, and work it up to the wings, shifting or still removing your fingers as you turn the Silk about the hook: and still looking at everie stop or turn, that your Gold, or what materials soever you make your *Fly* of, do lie right and neatly; and if you find they do so, then when you have made the head, make all fast, and then work your hackel up to the head, and make that fast: and then with a needle or pin divide the wing into two, and then with the arming Silk whip it about cross-waies betwixt the wings, and then with your thumb you must turn the point of the feather towards the bent of the hook, and then work three or four times about the shank of the hook, and then view the

pro-

I take the best to be of two pieces, and let not your Line exceed (especially for three or four links next to the hook) I say, not exceed three or four hairs at the most, though you may Fish a little stronger above in the upper part of your Line: but if you can attain to Angle with one hair, you shall have more rises, and catch more Fish. Now you must be sure not to cumber yourself with too long a Line, as most do: and before you begin to angle, cast to have the wind on your back, and the Sun (if it shines) to be before you, and to Fish down the stream; and carrie the point or top of your Rod downward, by which means the shadow of your self, and Rod too will be the least offensive to the Fish, for the sight of any shade amazes the Fish, and spoils your sport, of which you must take a great care.

In the middle of *March* (till which time a man should not in honestie catch a Trout) or in *April*, if the weather be dark, or a little windie or cloudie, the best Fishing is with the *Palmer-worm*, of which I last spoke to you, but of these there be divers kinds, or at least of divers colours; these and the *May-fly* are the ground of all Flic-Angling, which are to be thus made.

First, you must arme your hook with the line in the inside of it, then take your Scissers, and cut so much of a brown Malards feather as in  
your

your own reason will make the wings of it, you having withall regard to the bigness or litteness of your hook, then lay the outmost part of your feather next to your hook, then the point of your feather next the shank of your hook; and having so done, whip it three or four times about the hook with the same Silk, with which your hook was armed, and having made the Silk fast, take the hackel of a *Cock* or *Capons* neck, or a *Plovers* top, which is usually better: take off the one side of the feather, and then take the hackel, Silk or Crewel, Gold or Silver thred, make these fast at the bent of the hook, that is to say, below your arming; then you must take the hackel, the Silver or Gold thred, and work it up to the wings, shifting or still removing your fingers as you turn the Silk about the hook: and still looking at everie stop or turn, that your Gold, or what materials soever you make your *Fly* of, do lie right and neatly; and if you find they do so, then when you have made the head, make all fast, and then work your hackel up to the head, and make that fast: and then with a needle or pin divide the wing into two, and then with the arming Silk whip it about cross-waies betwixt the wings, and then with your thumb you must turn the point of the feather towards the bent of the hook, and then work three or four times about the shank of the hook, and then view the

pro-

proportion, and if all be neat and to your liking, fasten.

I confesse, no direction can be given to make a man of a dull capacitie able to make a Flie well: and yet I know, this with a little practice will help an ingenuous Angler in a good degree: but to see a Flie made by an Artift in that kind, is the best teaching to make it, and then an ingenuous Angler may walk by the River and mark what Flie falls on the water that day, and catch one of them, if he see the *Trouts* leap at a flie of that kind, and then having alwaies hooks readie hung with him, and having a bag also, alwaies with him with Bears hair, or the hair of a brown or sad-coloured Heifer, hackels of a Cock or Capon, severall coloured Silk and Crewel to make the bodie of the flie, the feathers of a Drakes head, black or brown Sheeps wool, or Hogs wool, or hair, thred of Gold and of Silver: Silk of severall colours (especially sad coloured to make the flies head: ) and there be also other coloured feathers both of little birds and of peckled fowl. I say, having those with him in a bag, and trying to make a flie, though he miss at first, yet shall he at last hit it better, even to such a perfection which none can well teach him; and if he hit to make his Flie right, and have the luck to hit also where there is store of *Trouts*, a dark day, and a right wind, he will catch such store

store of them, as will encourage him to grow more and more in love with the Art of *Fly-making*.

*Venat.* But my loving Master, if any wind will not serve, then I wish I were in *Lapland*, to buy a good wind of one of the honest Witches, that sell so manie winds, and so cheap.

*Pisc.* Marrie Scholer, but I would not be there, nor indeed from under this tree: for look how it begins to rain, and by the clouds if I mistake not we shall presently have a smoaking showre, and therefore sit close, this *Sycamore-tree* will shelter us: and I wil tell you, as they shall come into my mind, more observation of flie-fishing for a trout.

But first for the wind, you are to take notice, that of the winds the *Southwind* is said to be best. One observes, That

—When the wind is south,  
It blowes your bait into a fishes mouth.

Next to that, the *West vvind* is believed to be the best: and having told you that the *East vvind* is the vvorst, I need not tell you vvich vvind is the best in the third degree: And yet (as *Solomon* observes) that *He that considers the wind shall never sow*: so he that busies his head too much about them, (if the vveather be not made extreme cold by an *East wind*) shall be a little



little superstitious : For as it is observed by some, That there is no good Horſe of a bad colour ; ſo I have obſerved that if it be a cloudy day, and not extreme cold, let the Wind ſit in what corner it will, and do its worſt. And yet take this for a rule, that I would willingly fiſh ſtanding on the Lee-ſhore : and you are to take notice, that the Fiſh lies or ſwimmes nearer the bottom, and in deeper water in Winter than in Summer ; and alſo nearer the bottom in any cold day, and then gets neareſt the low ſide of the water.

But I promiſed to tell you more of the Flie-fiſhing for a *Trout*, which I may have time enough to do, for you ſee it rains *May butter* : **Firſt** for a *May-flie*, you may make his body with greeniſh coloured Crewel, or Willowiſh colour ; darkning it in moſt places with waxed Silk, or rib'd with a black hair, or ſome of them rib'd with ſilver thred ; and ſuch Wings for the colour as you ſee the flie to have at that ſeaſon ; nay, at that very day on the water. Or you may make the *Oak-flie* with an Orange-tawny and black ground, and the brown of a Mallards feather for the Wings ; and you are to know, that theſe two are moſt excellent flies, that is, the *May-flie* and the *Oak-flie*. And let me again tell you, that you keep as far from the water as you can poſſibly, whether you fiſh with a flie or worm, and fiſh down the ſtream ;  
and



and when you fish with a flie, if it be possible, let no part of your line touch the water, but your flie only; and be still moving your flie upon the water, or casting it into the water, you your self being also alwayes moving down the streame. Mr. *Barker* commendes severall sorts of the *Palmer* flies, not onely those rib'd with silver and gold, but others that have their bodies all made of black, or some with red, and a red hackel; you may also make the *Hawthorn-flye*, which is all black, and not big, but very small, the smaller the better; or the *Oak-flye*, the body of which is Orange-color and black Crewel, with a brown Wing; or a *Flye* made with a *Peacocks* feather, is excellent in a bright day: You must be sure you want not in your Magazine-bag the *Peacocks* feather, and grounds of such wool and Crewel as will make the *Grashopper*: and note that usually the smallest flies are best: and note also, that the light flie does usually make most sport in a dark day; and the darkest and least flie in a bright or clear day: and lastly note, that you are to repair upon any occasion to your Magazine-bag, and upon any occasion vary and make them lighter or sadder according to your fancy or the day.

And now I shall tell you, that the fishing with a natural flie is excellent, and affords much pleasure; they may be found thus, the *May-flye* usually in and about that moneth near to the River side, especially against rain;

the *Oak-flye* on the butt or body of an *Oak* or *Ash* from the beginning of *May* to the end of *August*; it is a brownish flye, and easie to be so found, and stands usually with his head downward, that is to say, towards the root of the tree; the small black flye, or *Hawthorn flye*, is to be had on any *Hawthorn* bush after the leaves be come forth; with these and a short Line (as I shewed to angle for a *Chub*) you may dape or dop, and also with a *Grashopper* behind a tree, or in any deep hole, still making it to move on the top of the water, as if it were alive, and still keeping your self out of sight, you shall certainly have sport if there be *Trouts*; yea, in a hot day, but especially in the evening of a hot day.

And now, Scholer, my direction for *Flie-fishing* is ended with this showre, for it has done raining, and now look about you, and see how pleasantly that *Meadow* looks; nay, and the *Earth* smells as sweetly too. Come, let me tell you what holie *Mr. Herbert* sayes of such dayes and flowers as these, and then we will thank *God* that we enjoy them, and walk to the *River* and sit down quietly, and trie to catch the other brace of *Trouts*.

*Sweet day, so cool; so calme, so bright,  
The bridal of the earth and skie,  
Sweet dewes shall weep thy fall to night,  
for thou must dye.*

*Sweet*

*Sweet Rose, whose beu angry and brave  
Bids the rash gazer wipe his eye,  
Thy root is ever in us grave,  
and thou must dye.*

*Sweet Spring, full of sweet dayes and roses,  
A box where sweets compacted lye;  
My Musick shewes you have your closes,  
and all must dye.*

*Onely a sweet and vertuous soul,  
Like seasoned Timber never gives,  
But when the whole world turns to cole,  
then chiefly lives.*

*Venat.* I thank you, good Master, for your good direction for Flie-fishing, and for the sweet enjoiment of the pleasant day, which is so far spent without offence to God or man: and I thank you for the sweet close of your discourse with Mr. *Herberts* Verses, which I have heard loved Angling; and I do the rather believe it, because he had a spirit suitable to Anglers, and to those primitive Christians that you love, and have so much commended.

*Pisc.* Well, my loving Scholer, and I am pleased, to know that you are so well pleased with my direction and discourse;

And since you like these Verses of Mr. *Her-*

berts so well, let me tell you what a reverend and learned Divine that professes to imitate him, (and has indeed done so most excellently) hath writ of our *Book of Common-prayer*, which I know you will like the better, because he is a friend of mine, and I am sure no enemie to Angling.

(not ?  
What ? prayer by the book ? and common ? Yes, why

*The Spirit of grace,  
And supplication,  
Is not left free alone*

*For time and place,  
But manner too : to read or speak by rote,  
Is all alike to him, that prays  
In's heart, what with his mouth he says.*

*They that in private by themselves alone  
Do pray, may take  
What liberty they please,  
In chusing of the wayes  
Wherein to make  
Their souls most intimate affections knowne  
To him that sees in secret, when  
Th' are most conceal'd from other men.*

*But he, that unto others leads the way  
In publick prayer,  
Should do it so  
As all that hear may know*

*They*

*They need not fear*

*To tune their hearts unto his tongue, and say,  
Amen ; nor doubt they were betray'd  
To blaspheme, when they should have pray'd.*

*Devotion will adde life unto the Letter,*

*And why should not  
That which Authority  
Prescribes, esteemed be  
Advantage got ?*

*If th' prayer be good, the commoner the better,  
Prayer in the Churches words, as well  
As sense, of all prayers bears the bell.*

*Ch. Harvie.*

And now, Scholer, I think it will be time to repair to our Angle-rods, which we left in the water to fish for themselves, and you shall chuse which shall be yours ; and it is an even lay, one of them catches.

And let me tell you, this kind of Fishing with a dead rod and laying night-hooks, are like putting money to Use, for they both work for the Owners, when they do nothing but sleep, or eat, or rejoyce, as you know we have done this last hour, and sate as quietly and as free from cares under his *Scycamore*, as *Virgills Tityrus* and his *Melibæas* did under their broad *Beech-tree* : No life, my honest Scholer, no life so happie and so pleasaut, as the life of a

well-governed *Angler* ; for when the *Lawyer* is swallowed up with business, and the *Statesman* is preventing or contriving plots, then we sit on *Cowslip-banks*, hear the Birds sing, and possesse our selves in as much quietness as these silent silver streams, which we now see glide so quietly by us. Indeed my good Scholer, we may say of *Angling* as *Dr. Boteler* said of *Strawberries* ; Doubtless God could have made a better berry, but doubtless God never did : And so (if I might be Judge) God never did make a more calm, quiet, innocent recreation then *Angling*.

Ile tell you Scholer, when I fate last on this *Prime-rose-bank* and look'd down these Meadows ; I thought of them as *Charles* the Emperour did of the City of *Florence* : That they were too pleasant to be look'd on, but onely on *Holy-Days*. As I then fate on this very grass, I turn'd my present thoughts into Verse : 'Twas a wish which Ile repeate to you.

### The Anglers wish.

*I in these flowery Medes wo'd be,  
These Christall streams should solace me ;  
To whose harmonious bubbling noise,  
I with my Angle wo'd rejoyce.  
Sit here and see the Turtle-dove,  
Court his chaste Mate to acts of love ;*

*Or on that bank feel the West wind  
Breath health and plenty, please my mind  
To see sweet dew-drops kiss these flowres,  
And then washt off by April showres :  
Here heare my Clora sing \* a song,  
There see a Black-bird feed her young,  
Or a Leverock build her nest;  
Here give my weary spirits rest,  
And raise my low-pitcht thoughts above  
Earth, or what poore mortalls love :  
Thus free from Law-suits and the noise,  
Of Princes Courts I wo'd rejoyce.*

\* Like Her-  
mitic poore.

*Or with my Bryan and a book,  
Loyter long days near Shavvford brook ;  
There sit by him and eat my meat,  
There see the Sun both rise and set:  
There bid good morning to next day,  
There meditate my time away :  
And Angle on, and beg to have  
A quiet passage, to a welcome grave.*

When I had ended this composure, I left this place and saw a Brother of the Angle sit under that *honey-suckle-hedg*, (one that will prove worth your acquaintantance.) I sate down by him, and presently we met with an accidental piece of Merriment which I will relate to you; for it rains still.

On the other side of this very hedg sate a  
I 4 gang



gang of *Gypsies*, and neere to them sate a gang of *Beggars*: The *Gypsies* were then to divide all the money that had been got that week, either by stealing linnen or poultrie, or by Fortune-telling, or Legerdemaine, or indeed by any other sleights and secrets belonging to their mysterious Government. And the summe that was got that week proved to be but twenty and some odd shillings. The odd money was agreed to be distributed amongst the poor of their own Corporation; and for the remaining twentie shillings, that was to be divided unto four Gentlemen *Gypsies*, according to their severall degrees in their Commonwealth.

And the first or chiefest *Gypsie*, was to have a third part of the twenty shillings, which all men know is 6 s. 8 d.

The second was to have a fourth part of the 20 s. which all men know to be 5 s.

The third was to have a fifth part of the 20 s. which all men know to be 4 s.

The fourth and last *Gipsie* was to have a sixth part of the 20 s. which all men know to be 3 s 4 d.

As for example,

3 times 6 s. 8 d. is — 20 s.

And so is 4 times 5 s. — 20 s.

And so is 5 times 4 s. — 20 s.

And so is 6 times 3 s. 4 d. — 20 s.

And

And yet he that divided the mony was so very a Gipsie, that though he gave to every one these said sums, yet he kept one shilling of it for himself.

As for Example,

	s.	d.
	6	8
	5	0
	4	0
	3	4
makes but	19	0

But now you shal know, that when the four Gipsies saw he had got one shilling by dividing the money, though not one of them knew why to demand more, yet like Lords and Courtiers every gipsie envied him that was the gainer, and wrangled with him, and every one said the *remaining shilling belonged to him*: And so they fell to so high a contest about it, as none that knowes the faithfulnessse of one *Gypsie* to another, will easily believe; only we that have lived this last twentie years, are certain that money has been able to do much mischief. However the Gipsies were too wise to go to Law, and did therefore chuse their choice friends *Rook* and *Shark*, and our late English *Gusman* to be their Arbitrators and Umpire; and so they left this *Honey-suckle-hedge*, and went to *Tell fortunes*, and *cheat*, and get more money

money and lodging in the next Village.

When these were gone we heard as high a contention amongst the *beggers*, *Whether it was easiest to rip a Cloak, or to unrip a cloak?* One beggar affirmed it was all one; but that was denied by asking her, *if doing and undoing were all one?* then another said, *'Twas easiest to unrip a cloak,* for that was to let it alone. But she was answered, by asking her, how she unript it, if she let it alone? And she confest her self mistaken. These and twenty such like questions were proposed and answered with as much beggarly Logick and earnestnesse as was ever heard to proceed from the mouth of the most pertinacious Schismatick; and sometimes all the *Beggars* (whose number was neither more nor lesse then the Poets nine *Muses*) talk'd all together about this ripping and unripping, and none heard what the other said; but at last one beggar crav'd audience, and told them, that old father *Claws*, whom *Ben Johnson* in his *Beggars bush* created King of their Corporation, was that night to lodge at an Ale-house (called *Catch-her-by-the-way,*) not far from *Waltam-Crosse*, and in the high-rode towards *London*, and he desired them to spend no more time about that and such like questions, but refer all to Father *Claws* at night, and in the meane time draw cuts what song should be next sung, and who should sing it; They all agreed to the motion,

motion, and the lot fell to her that was the youngest and veriest Virgin of the company ; and she sung *Franck Davisons* Song, which he made forty years ago, and all the other of the company joined to sing the burthen with her : the Ditry was this, but first the burthen.

*Bright shines the Sun, play beggars play,  
Here's scraps enough to serve to day :*

*What noyse of viols is so sweet  
As when our merry clappers ring ?  
What mirth doth want when beggars meet ?  
A beggars life is for a King :*

*Eat, drink and play, sleep when we list,  
Go where we will so stocks be mist.  
Bright shines the Sun, play beggars play,  
here's scraps enough to serve to day.*

*The world is ours and ours alone,  
For we alone have world at will ;  
We purchase not, all is our own,  
Both fields and streets we beggars fill :  
Play beggars play, play beggars play,  
here's scraps enough to serve to day.*

*A hundred herds of black and white  
Upon our Gowns securely feed  
And yet if any dare us bite,  
He dies therefore as sure as Creed :*

*And*

*Thus beggers Lord it as they please,*

*And only beggers live at ease :*

*Bright shines the sun, play beggers play,*

*Here's scraps enough to serve to day.*

*Venat.* I thank you good Master, for this piece of merriment, and this Song, which was well humoured by the Maker, and well remembered by you.

*Pisc.* But I pray forget not the Ketch which you promised to make against night, for our Country man, honest *Coridon* will expect your Ketch and my Song, which I must be forced to patch up, for it is so long since I learnt it, that I have forgot a part of it. But come, now it hath done raining, lets stretch our legs a little in a gentle walk to the River, and try what interest our Angles will pay us for lending them so long to be used by the *Trouts*, lent them indeed like Usurers for our profit and their destruction.

*Venat.* Oh me, look you Master, a fish a fish, oh las Master I have lost her.

*Pisc.* I marrie Sir, that was a good fish indeed: if I had had the luck to have taken up that Rod, then 'tis twentie to one, he should not have broke my line by running to the Rods end as you suffered him: I would have held him within the bent of my Rod, (unlesse he had been fellow to the great *Trom* that is near an ell  
long,

long, which was of such a length and depth, that he had his picture drawn, and now to be seen at mine Hoste *Rickabies* at the *George* in *Ware*,) and it may be, by giving that very great *trout* the Rod, that is, by casting it to him into the water, I might have caught him at the long run, for so I use alwaies to do when I meet with an overgrown fish, and you will learn to do so too hereafter : for I tell you, Scholer, fishing is an Art, or at least, it is an Art to catch Fish.

*Venar.* But Master, I have heard, that the great *trout* you speak of is a *Salmon*.

*Pisc.* Trust me Scholer, I know not what to say to it. There are many Countrey people that believe *Hares* change Sexes every year : And there be very many Learned men think so too, for in their dissecting them they find many reasons to incline them to that belief. And whether this were a *Salmon* when he came into the fresh water, and his not returning into the sea hath altered him to another colour or kind, I am not able to say ; but I am certain he hath all the signs of being a Trout, both for his *shape*, *colour*, and *spots*, and yet many think he is not.

*Venat.* But Master, will this *trout* which I had hold of die ? for it is like he hath the hook in his belly.

*Pisc.* I will tell you, Scholer, that unless the hook be fast in his very Gorge, he will live, and a little time with the help of the water, will  
rust



rust the hook, and it will in time wear away: as the gravel doth in the horse hoof, which only leaves a false quarter.

And now Scholer, lets go to my Rod. Look you Scholer, I have a fish too, but it proves a logger-headed *Chub*, and this is not much a-miss, for this will pleasure some poor body, as we go to our lodging to meet our brother *Peter* and honest *Coridon*. Come, now bait your hook again, and lay it into the water, for it rains again; and we will ev'n retire to the *Sycamore-tree*, and there I will give you more directions concerning Fishing: for I would fain make you an Artist.

*Venat.* Yes, good Master, I pray let it be so.

*Pisc.* Well Scholer, now we are fate down and are at ease, I shall tell you a little more of *trout* Fishing, because I speak of the *Salmon* (which I purpose shall be next,) and then of the *Pike* or *Luoe*. You are to know, there is night as well as day-fishing for a *trout*, and that in the night the best *trouts* come out of their holds; and the manner of taking them, is on the top of the water with a great *Lob* or *Garden worm*, or rather two, which you are to Fish with in a place where the waters run somewhat quietly (for in a stream the bait will not be so well discerned.) I say, in a quiet or dead place near to some swift, there draw your bait over  
the



the top of the water to and fro, and if there be a good trout in the hole, he will take it, especially if the night be dark: for then he is bold and lies near the top of the water, watching the motion of any Frog, or Water-rat or Mouse that swims betwixt him and the skie, these he hunts after, if he sees the water but wrinkle, or move in one of these dead holes, where these great old Trouts usually lie near to their holds; for you are to note, that the great old Trout is both subtil and fearful, and lies close all day, and does not usually stir out of his hold, but lies in it as close in the day as the timorous hare does in her form: for the chief feeding of both is seldom in the day, but usually in the night, and then the great Trout feeds very boldly.

And you must Fish for him with a strong Line, and not a little hook, and let him have time to gorge your hook, for he does not usually forsake it, as he oft will in the day-fishing: and if the night be not dark, then Fish so with an Artificial fly of a light-colour: nay, he will sometimes rise at a dead Mouse, or a piece of cloth, or any thing that seems to swim cross the water; or to be in motion: this is a choice way, but I have not oft used it, because it is void of the pleasures that such daies as these, that we two now enjoy, afford an Angler.

And you are to know, that in Hampshire,  
vvhich

vvhich I think exceeds all *England* for swift, shallow, clear, pleasant Brooks, and store of *trouts*, they use to catch *Trouts* in the night, by the light of a Torch or straw, vvhich vvhen they have discovered, they strike vvith a Trout-speer or other vvaies. This kind of vvay they catch very many, but I vvould not believe it till I vvas an eye-vvitnes of it, nor do I like it now I have seen it.

*Venat.* But Master, do not *trouts* see us in the night?

*Pisc.* Yes, and hear, and smell too, both then and in the day time, for *Gesner* observes, the *Otter* smells a Fish forty furlong off him in the vvater: and that it may be true, seems to be affirmed by Sir *Francis Bacon* (in the eight Century of his *Naturall History*) vvho there proves, that vvaters may be the *Medium* of sounds, by demonstrating it thus, *That if you knock two stones together very deep under the water, those that stand on a bank near to that place may hear the noise without any diminution of it by the water.* He also offers the like experient concerning the letting an *Anchor* fall by a very long cable or rope on a rock, or the sand vvithin the Sea: and this being so vvell observed and demonstrated, as it is by that learned man, has made me to believe that *Eeles* unbed themselves, and stir at the noise of the Thunder, and not onely, as some think, by the motion or the stirring of the earth vvhich

which is occasioned by that Thunder.

And this reason of Sir *Francis Bacon* (*Exper.* 792.) has made me crave pardon of one that I laugh at, for affirming that he knew *Carps* come to a certain place in a Pond to be fed at the ringing of a Bell, or the beating of a Drum; and it shall be a rule for me to make as little noise as I can when I am fishing, untill Sir *Francis Bacon* be confuted, which I shall give any man leave to do.

And, lest you may think him singular in this opinion, I will tell you, this seems to be believed by our learned Doctor *Hackwell*, who (in his *Apology of Gods Power and Providence*, f. 360) quotes *Pliny* to report that one of the Emperors had particular Fish-ponds, and in them several Fish, that appeared and came when they were called by their particular names: and St. *James* tells us (*chap. 3. and 7.*) that all things in the Sea have been tamed by Mankind. And *Pliny* tells us (*lib. 9. 35.*) that *Antonia* the Wife of *Drusus* had a *Lamprey*, at whose gills she hung Jewels or Ear-rings; and that others have been so tender-hearted, as to shed tears at the death of Fishes, which they have kept and loved. And these Observations, which will to most hearers seem wonderful, seem to have a further confirmation from *Marshall*, (*lib. 4. epigr. 30.*) who writes thus:

*Piscator fuge ne nocens, &c.*

Angler, would'st thou be guilelesse ? then forbear,  
For these are sacred fishes that swimme here ;  
Who know their Sovereign, and will lick his hand ;  
Then which none's greater in the worlds command :  
Nay more, th' have names, and when they called are,  
Do to their severall owners Call repair.

All the further use that I shall make of this, shall be to advise anglers to be patient, and forbear swearing, lest they be heard and catch no Fish.

And so I shall proceed next to tell you, it is certain, that certain fields near *Lemster*, a Town in *Hereford-shire*, are observed that they make the sheep that graze upon them more fat than the next, and also to bear finer Wool ; that is to say, that that Year in which they feed in such a particular pasture, they shall yield finer wool than they did that Year before they came to feed in it, and courser again if they shall return to their former pasture ; and again return to a finer wool being fed in the fine wool ground. Which I tell you, that you may the better believe that I am certain, if I catch a *Trout* in one Meadow, he shall be *white* and *faint*, and very like to be *lowse* ; and as certainly, if I catch a *Trout* in the next Meadow, he shall be *strong*, and  
red,

*red, and lusty, and much better meat : Trust me, Scholer, I have caught many a Trout in a particular Meadow, that the very shape and the enamell'd colour of him hath been such, as hath joyed me to look on him; and I have with much pleasure concluded with Solomon, Every thing is beautiful in his season.*

I should by promise speak next of the *Salmon*, but I will by your favour say a little of the *Umber* or *Grayling* ; which is so like a *Trout* for his shape and feeding, that I desire I may exercise your patience with a short discourse of him, and the next shall be of the *Salmon*.

---

## CHAP. VI.

*Observations of the Umber or Grayling, and directions how to fish for them.*

*Pisc.* **T**HE *Umber* and *Grayling* are thought by some to differ as the *Herring* and *Pilcher* do : But though they may do so in other Nations, I think those in *England* differ nothing but in their names. *Aldrovandus* sayes, they be of a *Trout* kind : and *Gesner* sayes, that in his Countrey (which is *Swisserland*) he is accounted the choicest Fish. And in *Italy*, he is in

the moneth of *May* so highly valued, that he is sold then at a much higher rate than any other Fish. The *French* (which call the *Chub*, *Un Villan*) call the *Umber* of the Lake *Lemon*, *Un Umble Chevaliere*; and they value the *Umber* or *Grayling* so highly, that they say he feeds on gold, and that many have been caught out of their famous River of *Loyre*, out of whose bellies grains of gold have been often taken. And some think that he feeds on *Water-Time*, and smells so at his first taking out of the water; and they may think so with as good reason as we do, that our *Smelts* smell like *Violets* at their being first caught; which I think is a truth. *Aldrovandus* sayes, the *Salmon*, the *Grayling* and *Trout*, and all Fish that live in clear and sharp streams, are made by their mother *Nature* of such exact shape and pleasant colors, purposely to invite us to a joy and contentedness in feasting with her. Whether this is a truth or not, is not my purpose to dispute; but 'tis certain, all that write of the *Umber* declare him to be very medicinable. And *Gesner* sayes, that the fat of a *Grayling* being set with a little *Honie* a day or two in the *Sun* in a little glass, is very excellent against redness, or any thing that breeds in the eyes. *Salvian* takes him to be called *Umber* from his swift swimming or gliding out of sight, more like a shadow or a ghost than a fish. Much more might be said both of the



the smell and taste, but I shall only tell you, that *S. Ambrose* the glorious Bishop of *Millan* (who liv'd when the Church kept Fasting days) calls him the *flowre fish*, or flowre of fishes; and that he was so far in love with him, that he would not let him pass without the honour of a long Discourse; but I must; and pass on to tell you how to take this dainty fish.

First, Note, That he growes not to the bignesse of a Trout; for the biggest of them do not usually exceed eighteen inches, he lives in such Rivers as the Trout does, and is usually taken with the same baits as the Trout is, and after the same manner, for he will bite both at the *Minnow*, or *Worm*, or *Fly*, (though he bites not often at the Minnow) and is very game-some at the *Fly*, and much simpler, and therefore bolder then a Trout, for he will rise twenty times at a flye, if you miss him, and yet rise again. He has been taken with a flye made of the red feathers of a *Parraketa*, a strange outlandish bird, and he will rise at a flye not unlike a gnat or a small moth, or indeed, at most flies that are not too big. He is a fish that lurks close all winter, but is very pleasant and jolly after mid-*April* and in *May*, and in the hot months: he is of a fine shape, his flesh is white, his teeth, those little ones that he has are in his throat, yet he has so tender a mouth, that he is oftner lost after an Angler has



hooked him then any other fish. Though there be many of these Fishes in *Trent*, and some other smaller Rivers, as that which runs by *Salisbury*, yet he is not so general a fish as the *Trout*, nor to me so good to eat or to Angle for. And so I shall take my leave of him, and come to some observations of the *Salmon*, and how to catch him.

---

## CHAP. VII.

### *Observations of the Salmon, with directions how to fish for him.*

*Pisc.* **T**HE *Salmon* is accounted the King of fresh-water-Fish, and is ever bred in Rivers relating to the sea, yet so high or far from it as admits of no tincture of salt or brackishness; He is said to breed or cast his spawn in most Rivers in the month of *August*: some say, that then they dig a hole or grave in a safe place in the gravel, and there place their eggs or spawn (after the Melter has done his naturall Office) and then hid it most cunningly, and cover it over with gravel and stones; and so leave it to their Creators protection, who by a gentle heat which he infuses into that cold element makes it brood and beget life in the spawn, and

and to become *Samlets* early in the spring next following.

The *Salmons* having spent their appointed time, and done this Natural Duty in the fresh waters, they haste to the Sea before Winter, both the Melter and Spawner : but if they be stopt by *Floud-gates* or *Weres*, or lost in the fresh waters, then those so left behind, by degrees grow *sick*, and *lean*, and *unseasonable*, and *kipper*, that is to say, have bony gristles grow out of their lower chaps (not unlike a Hawks beak) which hinders their feeding, and in time such Fish so left behind, pine away and dye. 'Tis observed, that he may live thus one year from the Sea ; but he then grows insipid, and tasteless, and loses both his blood and strength, and pines and dies the second year. And 'tis noted, that those little *Salmons* called *Skeggers*, which abound in many Rivers relating to the *sea*, are bred by such sick *Salmon*, that might not go to the sea, and that though they abound, yet they never thrive to any considerable bigness.

But if the old *salmon* gets to the *sea*, then that gristle weares away, or is cast off (as the *Eagle* is said to cast his bill) and he recovers his strength, and comes next Summer to the same River (if it be possible) to enjoy the former pleasures that there posselt him ; for (as one has wittily observed) he has (like some persons of honour and Riches, which have both their

winter and Summer houses) the fresh Rivers for Summer, and the salt water for winter to spend his life in ; which is not (as Sir *Francis Bacon* hath observed in his *History of life and Death*) above ten years : And it is to be observed, that though they grow big in the Sea, yet they grow not fat but in fresh Rivers ; and it is observed, that the farther they get from the Sea, they be both the fatter and better,

Next, I shall tell you, that though they make very hard shift to get out of the fresh Rivers into the Sea, yet that they wil make harder shift to get out of the salt into the fresh Rivers, to spawn or possesse the pleasures that they have formerly found in them, to which end they will force themselves through *Floud-gates*, or over *Weires*, or *hedges*, or *stops* in the water, even beyond common belief. *Gesner* speaks of such places, as are known to be above eight foot high above water. And our *Cambden* mentions (in his *Britannia*) the like wonder to be in *Pembroke-shire*, where the River *Tivy* falls into the sea, and that the fall is so down-right, and so high, that the people stand and wonder at the strength and slight that they see the *Salmon* use to get out of the Sea into the said River ; and the manner and height of the place is so notable, that it is known far by the name of the *Salmon-leap*, concerning which, take this also out of *Michael Drayton*, my honest old friend,

*And*

And when the Salmon seeks a fresher stream to find,  
 (Which hither from the Sea comes yearly by his kind)  
 As he towards season grows, & stems the watry tract  
 Where Tivy falling down, makes an high cataract,  
 Forc'd by the rising rocks that there her course oppose,  
 As though within her bounds they meant her to inclose:  
 Here when the labouring fish does at the foot arrive,  
 And finds that by his strength he does but vainly strive,  
 His tail takes in his mouth, and bending like a bow  
 That's to ful compass drawn, aloft himself doth throw,  
 Then springing at his height as doth a little wand  
 That bended end to end, and started from mans hand,  
 Far off it self doth cast; so does the Salmon vane,  
 And if at first he fail, his second Summer sought,  
 He instantly essaies, and from his nimble ring,  
 Still jerking, never leaves untill himself he fling  
 Above the opposing stream.—

And next I shall tell you, that it is observed  
 by *Gesner* and others, that there is no better  
*Salmon* then in *England*: and that though some  
 of our Northern Countries have as fat and as  
 large as the River *Thames*, yet none are of so  
 excellent a taste.

And as I have told you that Sir *Francis Bacon*  
 observes, the age of a *Salmon* exceeds not ten  
 years, so let me next tell you, that his growth  
 is very sudden: it is said, that after he is got  
 into the sea, he becomes from a *Samlet*, not so  
 big as a *Gudgion*, to be a *Salmon*, in as short a  
 time

time as a Gosling becomes to be a Goose. Much of this has been observed by tying a *Ribband* or some known *tape* or *thred*, in the tail of some young *Salmons*, which have been taken in Weirs as they have swimm'd toward the salt water, and then by taking a part of them again with the known mark at the same place at their return from the Sea, which is usually about six moneths after; and the like experiment hath been tryed upon young *Swallowes*, who have after six moneths absence, been observed to return to the same chimney, there to make their nests and habitations for the Summer following: which has inclined many to think, that every *Salmon* usually returns to the same River in which it was bred, as young *Pigeons* taken out of the same *Dove-cote*, have also been observed to do.

And you are yet to observe further, that the He *Salmon* is usually bigger then the Spawner, and that he is more kipper, and less able to endure a winter in the fresh water, then the She is; yet she is at that time of looking less kipper and better, as watry, and as bad meat.

And yet you are to observe, that as there is no generall rule without an exception, so there are some few Rivers in this Nation, that have *Trouts* and *Salmon* in season in winter, as 'tis certain there be in the River *Wy* in *Munmoth-shire*, where they be in season (as *Cambden* observes)

serves) from *September* till *April*. But my Scholar, the observation of this and many other things, I must in manners omit, because they will prove too large for our narrow compass of time, and therefore I shall next fall upon my direction how to fish for this *Salmon*.

And for that first, you shall observe, that usually he staies not long in a place (as *Trouts* will) but (as I said) covets still to go nearer the Spring-head; and that he does not (as the *Trout* and many other fish) lie near the water side or bank, or roots of trees, but swims in the deep and broad parts of the water, and usually in the middle, and near the ground; and that there you are to Fish for him, and that he is to be caught as the *Trout* is, with a *Worm*, a *Minnow*, (which some call a *Penke*) or with a *Fly*.

And you are to observe, that he is very seldom observed to bite at a *Minnow*, (yet sometime he will) and not oft at a *fly*, but more usually at a *Worm*, and then most usually at a *Lob* or *Garden-worm*, which should be well scoured, that is to say, seven or eight daies in Moss before you fish with them: and if you double your time of eight into sixteen or more, into twenty or more daies, it is still the better, for the worms will still be clearer, tougher, and more lively, and continue so longer upon your hook, and they may be kept longer by keeping them cool and in fresh Moss.



Note also, that many use to fish for a *Salmon* with a ring of wyre on the top of their Rod, through which the Line may run to as great a length as it is needfull when he is hook'd. And to that end, some use a wheel about the middle of their Rod, or nearer their hand, which are to be observed either by seeing one of them, or a large demonstration of words.

And now I shall tell you, that which may be called a secret: I have been a fishing with old *Oliver Henly*, (now with God) a noted Fisher, both for *Trout* and *Salmon*, and have observed, that he would usually take three or four worms out of his bag, and put them into a little box in his pocket, where he would usually let them continue half an hour or more, before he would bait his hook with them; I have asked him his reason, and he has replied, *He did but pick the best out to be in a readinesse against he baited his hook the next time*: But he has been observed both by others, and my self, to catch more fish then I or any other body, that has ever gone a fishing with him could do, and especially *Salmons*; and I have been told lately by one of his most intimate and secret friends, that the box in which he put those worms, was annointed with a drop, or two, or three of the Oil of *Ivy berries*, made by expression or infusion, and that by the worms remaining in that box an hour, or a like time, they had incorporated a kind of smell  
that



that was irresistibly attractive, enough to force any fish within the smell of them, to bite. This I heard not long since from a friend, but have not tryed it; yet I grant it probable, and refer my Reader to Sir *Francis Bacons* Natural History, where he proves fishes may hear: and I am certain *Gesner* saies, the Otter can smell in the water, and I know not but that fish may do so too: 'tis left for a lover of Angling, or any that desires to improve that Art, to try this conclusion.

I shall also impart two other experiments (but not tryed by my self) which I will deliver in the same words that they were given me (by an excellent Angler, and a very friend) in writing, he told me the latter was too good to be told, but in a learned language, lest it should be made common.

*Take the stinking oil, drawn out of Polypody of the Oak by a retort, mixt with Turpentine, and Hive-honey, and annoint your bait therewith, and it will doubtless draw the fish to it.*

The other is this: *Vulnera hedera grandissime inflectar sudant Balsamum oleo gelato, albicanteque persimile, odoris vero longe suavisimi.*

'Tis supremely sweet to any fish, and yet *A-sa-fœtida* may do the like.

But in these things I have no great faith, yet grant it probable, and have had from some chymical men (namely, from Sir *George Hastings* and

and others) an affirmation of them to be very advantageous : but no more of these, especially not in this place.

I might here, before I take my leave of the *Salmon*, tell you, that there is more then one sort of them, as namely, a *Teeon*, and another called in some places a *Samlet*, or by some, a *Skegger* : but these (and others which I forbear to name) may be Fish of another kind, (and differ, as we know a *Herring* and a *Pilcher* do,) which I think are as different, as the Rivers in which they breed, and must by me be left to the disquisitions of men of more leisure, and of greater abilities, then I profess my self to have.

And lastly, I am to borrow so much of your promised patience, as to tell you that the *Trout* or *Salmon* being in season, have at their first taking out of the water (which continues during life) their bodies adorned, the one with such red spots, and the other with such black or blackish spots, which gives them such an addition of natural beauty, as I think, was never given to any woman by the Artificial Paint or Patches in which they so much pride themselves in this age. And so I shall leave them, and proceed to some Observations of the *Pike*.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Observations of the Luce or Pike, with directions how to fish for him.*

*Pisc.* **T**HE mighty *Luce* or *Pike* is taken to be the Tyrant (as the *Salmon* is the King) of the fresh waters. 'Tis not to be doubted, but that they are bred, some by generation, and some not : as namely, of a Weed called *Pickerel-weed*, unlessse learned *Gesner* be much mistaken ; for he sayes, this weed and other glutinous matter, with the help of the Suns heat in some particular Moneths, and some Ponds apted for it by nature, do become *pikes*. But doubtlesse divers *pikes* are bred after this manner, or are brought into some Ponds some other wayes that is past mans finding out, of which we have daily testimonies.

Sir *Francis Bacon* in his History of Life and Death, observes the *pike* to be the longest lived of any fresh-water-Fish, and yet he computes it to be not usually above forty years ; and others think it to be not above ten years ; and yet *Gesner* mentions a *pike* taken in *Swedeland* in the Year 1449. with a Ring about his neck, declaring he was put into the Pond by *Frederick* the second, more than two hundred years before

fore he was last taken, as by the Inscription of that Ring (being Greek) was interpreted by the then Bishop of *Worms*. But of this no more, but that it is observed, that the old or very great Pikes have in them more of state than goodness; the smaller or middle sized Pikes being by the most and choicest Palates observed to be the best meat; and contrary, the Eele is observed to be the better for age and bigness.

All *Pikes* that live long prove chargeable to their Keepers, because their life is maintained by the death of so many other Fish, even those of his own kind, which has made him by some Writers to be called the *Tyrant* of the Rivers, or the *Fresh-water-woolf*, by reason of his bold, greedy devouring disposition; which is so keen, as *Gesner* relates, a man going to a Pond (where it seems a *Pike* had devoured all the fish) to water his Mule, had a *Pike* bit his Mule by the lips, to which the *Pike* hung so fast, that the Mule drew him out of the water, and by that accident the owner of the Mule got the *pike*. And the same *Gesner* observes, that a Maid in *Poland* had a *pike* bit her by the foot as she was washing clothes in a Pond. And I have heard the like of a woman in *Killingworth* Pond, not far from *Coventry*. But I have been assured by my friend *Mr. Seagrave*, of whom I spake to you formerly, that keeps tame Otters, that he hath known a *pike* in extreme hunger fight with

with one of his Otters for a Carp that the Otter had caught, and was then bringing out of the water. I have told you who relates these things, and tell you they are persons of credit, and shall conclude this observation, by telling you what a wise man has observed, *It is a hard thing to persuade the belly, because it has no ears.*

But if these relations be disbelieved, it is too evident to be doubted that a *pike* will devour a Fish of his own kind, that shall be bigger than his belly or throat will receive, and swallow a part of him, and let the other part remain in his mouth till the swallowed part be digested, and then swallow that other part that was in his mouth, and so put it over by degrees; which is not unlike the Oxe and some other beasts, taking their meat not out of their mouth into their belly, but first into some place betwixt, and then chew it, or digest it after, which is called *Chewing the cud*. And doubtless *pikes* will bite when they are not hungry, but as some think in very anger, when a tempting bait comes near to them.

And it is observed, that the *pike* will eat venomous things, (as some kind of *Frogs* are) and yet live without being harmed by them: for, as some say, he has in him a natural Balsom or Antidote against all poison; and others, that he never eats the venomous *Frog*, till he have first killed her, and then (as *Ducks* are obser-

ved to do to *Frogs* in Spawning time, at which time some *Frogs* are observed to be venomous) so thoroughly washt her, by tumbling her up and down in the water, that he may devour her without danger. And *Gesner* affirms, that a *Polonian* Gentleman did faithfully assure him, he had seen two young *Geese* at one time in the belly of a *pike*. And doubtlesse a *pike* in his height of hunger will bite at and devour a dog that swimmes in a Pond, and there has been examples of it, or the like; for as I told you, *The belly has no ears when hunger comes upon it.*

The *pike* is also observed to be a solitary, melancholly and a bold Fish: Melancholly, because he alwayes swimmes or rests himself alone, and never swimmes in shoales or with company, as *Roach* and *Dace*, and most other Fish do: And bold, because he fears not a shadow, or to see or be seen of any body, as the *Trout* and *Chub*, and all other Fish do.

And it is observed by *Gesner*, that the Jaw-bones, and Hearts, and Galls of *piques* are very medicinable for several diseases, or to stop bloud, to abate Fevers, to cure Agues, to oppose or expel the infection of the Plague, and to be many wayes medicinable and useful for the good of Mankind; but he observes, that the biting of a *pike* is venomous and hard to be cured.

And it is observed, that the Pike is a fish that  
breeds



breeds but once a year, and that other fish (as namely *Loaches*) do breed oftner : as we are certain tame Pigeons do almost every moneth ; and yet the Hawk, a bird of prey (as the Pike is of Fish) breeds but once in twelve moneths : and you are to note, that his time of breeding or Spawning is usually about the end of *February*, (or somewhat later, in *March*, as the weather proves colder or warmer) and to note, that his manner of breeding is thus, a He and a She Pike will usually go together out of a River into some ditch or creek, and that there the Spawner casts her eggs, and the Melter hovers over her all that time that she is casting her Spawn, but touches her not.

I might say more of this, but it might be thought curiosity or worse, and shall therefore forbear it, and take up so much of your attention as to tell you, that the best of Pikes are noted to be in *Rivers*, next those in great *Ponds* or *Meres*, and the worst in small *Ponds*.

But before I proceed further, I am to tell you, that there is a great antipathie betwixt the Pike and some Frogs ; and this may appear to the Reader of *Dubravins*, (a Bishop in *Bohemia*,) Who in his Book of Fish and Fish-ponds, relates what he saies he saw with his own eyes, and could not forbear to tell the Reader. Which was :

As he and Bishop Thurzo were walking by a

large Pond in Bohemia, they saw a Frog, when the Pike lay very sleepily and quiet by the shore side, leap upon his head, and the Frog having exprest malice or anger by his swolne cheeks and staring eyes, did stretch out his legs and imbraced the Pikes head, and presently reached them to his eyes, tearing with them and his teeth those tender parts; the Pike moved with anguish, moves up and down the water and rubs himself against weeds, and what ever he thought might quit him of his enemy; but all in vain, for the frog did continue to ride triumphantly, and to bite and torment the Pike till his strength failed, and then he sunk with the Pike to the bottom of the water; then presently the frog appeared again at the top and croaked, and seemed to rejoyce like a Conqueror, and then presently rettyred to her secret hole. The Bishop, that had beheld the battel, called his fisherman to fetch his nets, and by all means to get the Pike, that they might declare what had hapned: and the Pike was drawn forth with both his eyes eaten out, at which when they began to wonder, the Fisherman wished them to forbear, and assured them he was certain that Pikes were often so served.

I told this (which is to be read in the sixth Chapter of the Book of *Dubravins*) unto a friend, who replied, It was as improbable as to have the mouse scratch out the cats eyes. But he did not consider that there be fishing Frogs (which the *Dalmatians* call the Water-Devil) of which I might tell you as wonderful a story, but I shall

tell

tell you, that 'tis not to be doubted, but that there be some Frogs so fearful of the Water-snake, that when they swim in a place they fear to meet with him, they get a reed acrossse into their mouthes, which if they two meet by accident, secures the frog from the strength and malice of the Snake, and note, that the frog swims the faster.

And let me tell you, that as there be *Water* and *Land-frogs*, so there be *Land* and *Water-snakes*. Concerning which take this Observation, That the Land-snake breeds and hatches her eggs, which become young Snakes in some old dunghil, or a like hot place ; but the Water-snake, which is not venemous (and as I have been assured by a great observer of such secrets) does breed her young alive, which she does not then forsake, but bides with them, and in case of danger will take them all into her mouth and swim away from any apprehended danger, and let them out again when she thinks all danger to be past : These be accidents that we Anglers sometimes see and often talk of.

But whither am I going ? I had almost lost my self by remembering the Discourse of *Dubravins*. I will therefore stop here, and tell you according to my promise how to catch this fish.



His feeding is usually of *fish* or *frogs*, and sometimes a weed of his own called *Pickerell-weed*. Of which I told you some think some Pikes are bred; for they have observed that where none have been put into Ponds, yet they have there found many: and that there has been plenty of that weed in those Ponds, and that that weed both breeds and feeds them; but whether those Pikes so bred will ever breed by generation as the others do, I shall leave to the disquisitions of men of more curiosity and leisure than I profess my self to have; and shall proceed to tell you that you may fish for a Pike, either with a *ledger* or a *walking bait*; and you are to note, that I call that a *Ledger bait* which is fixed, or made to rest in one certain place when you shall be absent: and I call that a *walking bait*, which you take with you, and have ever in motion. Concerning which two, I shall give you this direction, That your *ledger bait*

bait is best to be a living bait, whether it be a fish or a frog; and that you may make them live the longer, you may, or indeed you must take this course.

First, for your live bait of fish, a *Roch* or *Dace* is (I think) best and most tempting, and a *Pearch* is the longest lived on a hook, and having cut off his fin on his back, which may be done without hurting him, you must take your knife, (which cannot be too sharp) and betwixt the head and the fin on the back, cut or make an incision, or such a scar as you may put the arming wiew of your hook into it, with as little bruising or hurting the fish as Art and diligence will enable you to do, and so carrying your arming wiew along his back, unto, or near the taile of your Fish, betwixt the skin and the body of it, draw out that wiew or arming of your hook at another scar near to his tail: then tie him about it with thred, but no harder then of necessity you must to prevent hurting the fish; and the better to avoid hurting the Fish, some have a kind of probe to open the way, for the more easie entrance and passage of your wyer or arming: but as for these, time and a little experience will teach you better then I can by words; therefore I will for the present say no more of this, but come next to give you some directions how to bait your hook with a frog.

*Ven.* But good Master, did not you say even

now, that some *Frogs* were venemous, and is it not dangerous to touch them?

*Pisc.* Yes, but I will give you some Rules or Cautions concerning them: And first, you are to note, there are two kinds of *Frogs*; that is to say, (if I may so express my self) a *flesh*, and a *fisk-frog*: by *flesh frogs*, I mean *frogs* that breed and live on the land; and of these there be several sorts also and colours, some being peckled, some greenish, some blackish, or brown: the green *Frog*, which is a small one, is by *Topsel* taken to be venemous; and so is the *padock*, or *Frog-paddock*, which usually keeps or breeds on the land, and is very large and bony, and big, especially the *She frog* of that kind; yet these will sometime come into the water, but it is not often; and the land frogs are some of them observed by him, to breed by laying eggs, and others to breed of the slime and dust of the earth, and that in winter they turne to slime again, and that the next Summer that very slime returns to be a living creature; this is the opinion of *Pliny*: and

\* In his 16.  
Book, De subtil.  
92.

\* *Cardanus* undertakes to give reason for the raining of *Frogs*: but if it were in my power, it should rain none but water-*Frogs*, for those I think are not venemous, especially the right water-*Frog*, which about *February* or *March* breeds in ditches by slime and blackish eggs in that slime, about which time of breeding the *He* and *She*  
Frog



Frog are observed to use divers *Summer-saunts*, and to croke and make a noise, which the land-frog, or Padok frog never does. Now of these water-frogs, if you intend to Fish with a frog for a Pike, you are to chuse the yellowest that you can get, for that the Pike ever likes best. And thus use your frog, that he may continue long alive.

Put your hook into his mouth, which you may easily do from about the middle of *April* till *August*, and then the frogs mouth grows up, and he continues so for at least six moneths without eating, but is sustained, none but he whose name is Wonderful, knowes how. I say, put your hook, I mean the arming wyer through his mouth, and out at his gills, and then with a fine needle and silk sow the upper part of his legg with onely one stich to the arming wire of your hook, or tye the frogs leg above the upper joynt to the armed wire, and in so doing, use him as though you loved him, that is, harm him as little as you may possibly, that he may live the longer.

And now, having given you this direction for the baiting your ledger hook with a live Fish or frog, my next must be to tell you, how your hook thus baited must or may be used: and it is thus. Having fastned your hook to a line, which if it be not fourteen yards long, should not be lesse then twelve; you are to fa-

sten

sten that line to any bough near to a hole where a Pike is, or is likely to lie, or to have a haunt, and then wind your line on any forked stick, all your line except half a yard of it or rather more, and split that forked stick with such a nick or notch at one end of it, as may keep the line from any more of it ravelling from about the stick, then so much of it as you intended ; and chuse your forked stick to be of that bigness as may keep the fish or frog from pulling the forked stick under the water till the Pike bites, and then the Pike having pulled the line forth of the cleft or nick of that stick in which it was gently fastned, will have line enough to go to his hold and powch the bait : and if you would have this ledger bait to keep at a fixt place, undisturbed by wind or other accidents which may drive it to the shore side, (for you are to note, that it is likeliest to catch a Pike in the midst of the water) then hang a small Plummert of lead, a stone, or piece of tyle, or a turf in a string, and cast it into the water, with the forked stick, to hang upon the ground to be an Anchor to keep the forked stick from moving out of your intended place till the Pike come. This I take to be a very good way, to use so many ledger baits as you intend to make tryal of.

Or if you bait your hooks thus, with live Fish or Frogs, and in a windy day, fasten them thus to a bough or bundle of straw, and by the help  
of

of that wind can get them to move crosse a pond or mere, you are like to stand still on the shore and see sport, if there be any store of *pikes*; or these live Baits may make sport, being tied about the body or wings of a *Goose* or *Duck*, and she chased over a Pond: and the like may be done with turning three or four live Baits thus fastned to Bladders, or Boughs, or Bottles of Hay, or Flags, to swim down a river, whilst you walk quietly alone on the shore, and are still in expectation of sport. The rest must be taught you by practice, for time will not allow me to say more of this kind of fishing with live Baits.

And for your dead Bait for a *pike*, for that you may be taught by one dayes going a fishing with me, or any other body that fishes for him, for the baiting your hook with a dead *Gudgeon* or a *Roach*, and moving it up and down the water, is too easie a thing to take up any time to direct you to do it; and yet, because I cut you short in that, I will commute for it, by telling you that that was told me for a secret: it is this,

*Dissolve Gum of Ivie in Oyle of Spike, and therewith annoynt your dead bait for a Pike, and then cast it into a likely place, and when it has layn a short time at the bottom, draw it towards the top of the water, and so up the stream, and it is more than likely that you have a Pike follow you with more than common eagerneffe.* And

And some affirm, that any Bait annointed with the marrow of the Thigh-bone of an *Hern* is a great temptation to any Fish.

These have not been tried by me, but told me by a friend of note, that pretended to do me a courtesie : but if this direction to catch a *pike* thus do you no good, yet I am certain this direction how to roast him when he is caught, is choicely good, for I have tried it ; and it is somewhat the better for not being common : but with my direction you must take this Caution, that your *pike* must not be a small one, that is, it must be half a Yard, and should be bigger.

*First, open your Pike at the gills, and if need be, cut also a little slit towards his belly ; out of these take his guts, and keep his liver, which you are to shred very small with Time, Sweet-margerome, and a little Winter-savoury ; to these put some pickled Oysters, and some Anchovies two or three, both these last whole (for the Anchovies will melt, and the Oysters should not) to these you must adde also a pound of sweet Butter, which you are to mix with the herbs that are shred, and let them all be well salted, (if the Pike be more than a yard long, then you may put into these herbs more than a pound, or if he be lesse, then lesse Butter will suffice :) these being thus mixt with a blade or two of Mace, must be put into the Pikes belly, and then his belly sowed up, and so sowed up as to keep all the Butter in his belly if it be possible,*

fible, if not, then as much of it as you possible can, but take not off the scales ; then you are to thrust the spit through his mouth out at his tayle, and then with four, or five, or six split sticks, or very thin lathes, and a convenient quantity of Tape or Filling, these laths are to be tyed round about the Pikes body from his head to his tayle, and the Tape tyed somewhat thick to prevent his breaking or falling off from the spit ; let him be roasted very leasurely, and often basted with Claret wine and Anchovyes, and Butter mixt together, and also with what moisture falls from him into the pan : when you have roasted him sufficiently, you are to hold under him (when you unwind or cut the Tape that tyes him) such a dish as you purpose to eat him out of, and let him fall into it with the sawce that is roasted in his belly, and by this means the Pike will be kept unbroken and compleie : then to the sawce which was within, and also in the pan, you are to adde a fit quantity of the best Butter, and to squeeze the jynce of three or four Oranges : lastly, you may either put into the Pike with the Oysters, two cloves of Garlick, and take it whole out when the Pike is cut off the spit, or to give the sawce a hogo, let the dish (into which you let the Pike fall) be rubbed with it : the using or not using of this Garlick is left to your discretion.

M. B.

This dish of meat is too good for any but Anglers or honest men ; and I trust, you will  
prove

prove both, and therefore I have trusted you with this Secret.

Let me next tell you, that *Gesner* tells us there are no Pikes in *Spain*, and that the largest are in the Lake *Thrasimane* in *Italy*; and the next, if note quall to them, are the Pikes of *England*, and that in *England*, *Lincoln-shire* boasteth to have the biggest. Just so doth *Sussex* boast of four sorts of fish; namely an *Arundell Mullet*, a *Chichester Lobster*, a *Chelsey cockle*, and an *Amerly Trout*.

But I will take up no more of your time with this relation, but proceed to give you some observations of the *Carp*, and how to angle for him.

## CH A P. IX.

### *Observations of the Carp, with Directions how to fish for him.*

*Pisc.* **T**HE *Carp* is the Queen of Rivers, a stately, a good, and a very subtil fish, that was not at first bred, nor hath been long in *England*, but is now naturalized. It is said, they were brought hither by one Mr. *Mascal* a Gentleman, that then lived at *Plumsted* in *Sussex*, a County that abounds more with this fish then any in this Nation.

You



You may remember that I told you, *Gesner* says, there are no *Pikes* in *Spain*; and doubtlesse, there was a time, about a hundred or a few more years ago, when there were no *Carps* in *England*, as may seem to be affirmed by *Sir Richard Baker*, in whose *Chronicle* you may find these Verses.

*Hops and Turkies, Carps and Beer  
Came into England all in a year.*

And doubtlesse as of Sea-fish the *Herring* dies soonest out of the water, and of fresh-water-fish the *Trout*, so (except the *Eele*) the *Carp* endures most hardnesse, and lives longest out of his own proper element. And therefore the report of the *Carps* being brought out of a forraigne into this Nation is the more probable.

*Carps* and *Loaches* are observed to breed severall months in one year, which *Pikes* and most other Fish do not. And this is partly proved by tame and wild *Rabbets*, as also by some *Ducks*, which will lay eggs nine of the twelve months, and yet there be other *Ducks* that lay not longer then about one month. And it is the rather believed, because you shall scarce or never take a *Male Carp* without a *Melt*, or a *Female* without a *Roe* or *spawn*, and for the most part very much; and especially all the Summer season; and it is observed, that they breed more naturally in ponds then in running waters, (if they breed there at all;) and that those

those that are in Rivers are taken by men of the best palates to be much the better meat.

And it is observed, that in some ponds *Carp*s will not breed, especially in cold ponds; but where they will breed, they breed innumera-  
bly; *Aristotle* and *Pliny* say, six times in a year, if there be no *Pikes* nor *Pearch* to devour their Spawn, when it is cast upon grasse, or flags, or weeds, where it lies ten or twelve daies before it be enlivened.

The *Carp*, if he have water-room and good feed, will grow to a very great bignesse and length: I have heard, to be much above a yard long. 'Tis said (by *Jovius*, who hath writ of Fishes) that in the Lake *Lurian* in *Italy*, *Carp*s have thriven to be more then fifty pound weight, which is the more probable, for as the *Bear* is conceiv'd and born suddenly; and being born is but short-liv'd: So on the contrary, the *Elephant* is said to be two years in his dams belly (some think he is ten years in it,) and being born growes in bignesse twenty years; and 'tis observ'd too that he lives to the Age of a hundred years. And 'tis also observ'd that the *Crocodile* is very long-liv'd, and more then that, that all that long life he thrives in bignesse, and so I think some *Carp*s do, especially in some places; though I never saw one above 23. inches, which was a great and a goodly Fish: But  
have

have been assured there are of a far greater size, and in *England* too.

Now, as the increase of *Carps* is wonderful for their number; so there is not a reason found out, I think by any, why they should breed in some ponds, and not in others of the same nature, for soil and all other circumstances; and as their breeding, so are their decays also very mysterious: I have both read it, and been told by a Gentleman of tryed honesty, that he has known sixty or more large *Carps* put into severall ponds near to a house, where by reason of the stakes in the ponds, and the Owners constant being near to them, it was impossible they should be stole away from him, and that when he has after three or four years emptyed the pond, and expected an increase from them by breeding young ones (for that they might do so, he had, as the rule is, put in three Melters for one Spawner) he has, I say, after three or four years found neither a young nor old *Carp* remaining. And the like I have known of one that has almost watched his pond, and at a like distance of time at the Fishing of a pond found of seventy or eighty large *Carps* not above five or six: and that he had forbore longer to Fish the said pond, but that he saw in a hot day in Summer, a large *Carp* swim near to the top of the water with a Frog upon his head, and that he upon that occasion caused his pond to be let

M

dry:

dry : and I say, of seventy or eighty *Carps*, only found five or six in the said pond, and those very sick and lean, and with every one a Frog sticking so fast on the head of the said *Carps*, that the Frog would not be got off without extreme force or killing ; and the Gentleman that did affirm this to me, told me he saw it, and did declare his belief to be, (and I also believe the same) that he thought the other *Carps* that were so strangely lost, were so killed by frogs, and then devoured.

But I am fallen into this Discourse by accident, of which I might say more, but it has proved longer then I intended, and possibly may not to you be considerable ; I shall therefore give you three or four more short observations of the *Carp*, and then fall upon some directions how you shall Fish for him.

The age of *Carps* is by Sir Francis Bacon (in his History of Life and Death) observed to be but ten years ; yet others think they live longer. Gesner saies a *Carp* has been known to live in the *Palatinate* above a hundred years : But most conclude, that (contrary to the *Pike* or *Luce*) all *Carps* are the better for age and bigness, the tongues of *Carps* are noted to be choice and costly meat, especially to them that buy them ; but Gesner saies, *Carps* have no tongue like other Fish, but a piece of flesh like Fish in their mouth like to a tongue, and should be called

called a palate: But it is certain it is choicely good; and that the *Carp* is to be reckoned amongst those leather-mouthed fish, which I told you have their teeth in their throat, and for that reason he is very seldom lost by breaking his hold, if your hook be once stuck into his chaps.

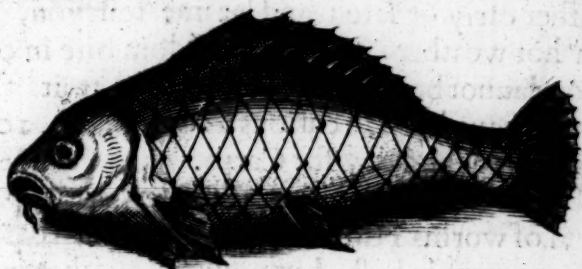
I told you, that *Sir Francis Bacon* thinks that the *Carp* lives but ten years, but *Jannus Dubravins* has writ a Book of Fish and Fish-ponds, in which he saies, that *Carps* begin to Spawn at the age of three years, and continues to do so till thirty; he saies also, that in the time of their breeding, which is in Summer, when the Sun hath warmed both the earth and water, and so apted them also for generation, that then three or four Male-*Carps* will follow a Female; and that then she putting on a seeming coyness, they force her through weeds and flags, where she lets fall her eggs or Spawn, which sticks fast to the weeds, and then they let fall their Melt upon it, and so it becomes in a short time to be a living fish; and as I told you, it is thought the *Carp* does this severall moneths in the year, and most believe that most fish breed after this manner, except the *Eele*: and it has been observed, that when the Spawner has weakned her self by doing that natural office, that two or three Melters have helped her from off the weeds, by bearing her up on both sides,

and garding her into the deep. And you may note, that though this may seem a curiosity not worth observing, yet others have judged it worth their time and costs, to make *Glasse-hives*, and order them in such a manner as to see how bees have bred and made their *Honey-combs*, and how they have obeyed their King, and governed their Common-wealth. But it is thought that all Carps are not bred by generation, but that some breed other waies, as some Pikes do.

The Physicians make the *galls* and *stones* in the heads of Carps to be very medicinable ; but 'tis not to be doubted but that in *Italy* they make great profit of the Spawn of Carps, by selling it to the Jewes, who make it into red *Caviare*, the Jews not being by their Law admitted to eat of *Caviare* made of the Sturgion, that being a Fish that wants scales, and (as may appear in *Levit. 11.*) by them to be reputed unclean.

Much more might be said out of him, and out of *Aristotle*, which *Dubravins* often quotes in his Discourse of Fishes ; but it might rather perplex then satisfie you, and therefore I shall rather chuse to direct you how to catch, then spend more time in discoursing either of the nature or the breeding of this *Carp*,





or of any more circumstances concerning him, but yet I shall remember you of what I told you before, that he is a very subtil Fish, and hard to be caught.

And my first direction is, that if you will Fish for a *Carp*, you must put on a very large measure of *patience*; especially to Fish for a *River Carp*: I have known a very good Fisher angle diligently four or six hours in a day, for three or four daies together for a *River Carp*, and not have a bite: and you are to note, that in some ponds it is as hard to catch a *Carp* as in a River; that is to say, where they have store of feed, and the water is of a clayish colour: But you are to remember, that I have told you there is no rule without an exception, and therefore being possesst with that hope and patience which I wish to all Fishers, especially to the *Carp-Angler*, I shall tell you with what bait to Fish for him.


him. But first you are to know, that it must be either early or late; and let me tell you, that in hot weather (for he will seldom bite in cold) you cannot be too early or too late at it. And some have been so curious as to say, the 10. of *April* is a fatal day for Carps.

The Carp bites either at worms or at paste, and of worms I think the blewish Marsh or Meadow worm is best, but possibly another worm not too big may do as well, and so may a green Gentle: And as for pastes, there are almost as many sorts as there are Medicines for the Toothach, but doubtlesse sweet pastes are best; I mean, pastes made with honey or with sugar: which, that you may the better beguile this crafty Fish, should be thrown into the Pond or place in which you fish for him some hours before you undertake your tryal of skill with the Angle-rod: and doubtlesse if it be thrown into the water a day or two before, at severall times and in small pellets, you are the likelier when you fish for the Carp to obtain your desired sport: or in a large Pond to draw them to any certain place, that they may the better and with more hope be fished for, you are to throw into it in some certain place, either Grains or Bloud mixt with Cow-dung, or with Bran; or any Garbage, as Chickens guts or the like, and then some of your small sweet pellets with which you purpose to angle; and these small pellets

pellets being a few of them also thrown in as you are Angling.

And your paste must be thus made: Take the flesh of a Rabbet or Cat cut small, and Bean-flowre, and if that may not be easily got, get other flowre, and then mix these together, and put to them either Sugar, or Honey, which I think better, and then beat these together in a Mortar, or sometimes work them in your hands, (your hands being very clean) and then make it into a ball, or two, or three, as you like best for your use: but you must work or pound it so long in the Mortar, as to make it so tough as to hang upon your hook without washing from it, yet not too hard; or that you may the better keep it on your hook, you may knead with your paste a little (and not much) white or yellowish wool.

And if you would have this paste keep all the year for any other Fish, then mix with it *Virgins wax* and *clarified honey*, and work them together with your hands before the Fire, then make these into balls, and it will keep all the year.

And if you fish for a Carp with Gentles, then put upon your hook a small piece of Scarlet about this bignesse , it being foked in, or annointed with *Oyle of Peter*, called by some *Oyle of the Rock*, and if your Gentles be put two or three dayes before into a box or horn an-

nointed with honey, and so put upon your hook, as to preserve them to be living, you are as like to kill this crafty Fish this way as any other: But still as you are Fishing chew a little white or brown bread in your mouth, and cast it into the pond about the place where your Flote swims. Other baits there be, but these with diligence, and patient watchfulness, will do it better then any that I have ever practised, or heard of: And yet I shall tell you, that the crumbs of white bread and honey made into a paste, is a good bait for a *Carp*, and you know it is more easily made. And having said thus much of the *Carp*, my next discourse shall be of the *Bream*, which shall not prove so tedious, and therefore I desire the continuance of your attention.

But first I will tel you how to make this *Carp* that is so curious to be caught, so curious a dish of meat, as shall make him worth all your labour; and though it is not without some trouble and charges, yet it will recompence both.

*Take a Carp (alive if possible) scour him, and rub him clean with water and salt, but scale him not, then open him, and put him with his bloud and his liver (which you must save when you open him) into a small pot or kettle; then take sweet Margerome, Time and Parsley, of each half a handful, a sprig of Rosemary, and another of Savoury, bind them into two or three small bundles, and put them to your Carp,*  
with

with four or five whole Onyons, twenty pickled Oysters, and three Anchovies. Then pour upon your Carp as much claret wine as will onely cover him; and season your claret well with salt, Cloves and Mace, and the rinds of Oranges and Lemmons, cover your pot and set it on a quick fire, till it be sufficiently boiled; then take out the Carp and lay it with the broth into the dish, and poure upon it a quarter of a pound of fresh butter melted and beaten, with half a dozen spoonfuls of the broth, the yolks of two or three eggs, and some of the herbs shred, garnish your dish with Lemmons, and so serve it up.

Dr. T.

---

C H A P. X.

*Observations of the Bream, and Directions to catch him.*

*Pisc.* **T**H E *Bream* being at a full growth is a large and stately Fish; he will breed both in Rivers and ponds: but loves best to live in ponds, and where, if he likes the water and aire, he will grow not only to be very large, but as fat as a Hog: he is by *Gesner* taken to be more pleasant or sweet then wholesome; this Fish is long in growing, but breeds exceedingly in an water that pleases him, yea, in many Ponds so fast

fast, as to over-store them, and starve the other Fish.

He is very broad with a forked taile, and his scales set in excellent order, he hath large eyes and a narrow sucking mouth; he hath two sets of teeth, and a lozing like bone, a bone to help his grinding. The Melter is observed to have two large Melts, and the Female two large bags of eggs or spawn.

*Gesner* reports, that in *Poland* a certain, and a great number of large Breames were put into a Pond, which in the next following winter was frozen up into one intire ice, and not one drop of water remaining, nor one of these fish to be found, though they were diligently searcht for; and yet the next Spring when the ice was thawed, and the weather warme, they all appeared again. This *Gesner* affirms, and I quote my Author, because it seems almost as incredible as the *Resurrection* to an *Atheist*. But it may win something in point of believing it, to him that considers the breeding or renovation of the Silk-worm, and of many insects. And that is considerable which *Sir Francis Bacon* observes in his *History of Life and Death* (*fol. 20.*) that there be some herbs that dye and spring every year, and some endure longer.

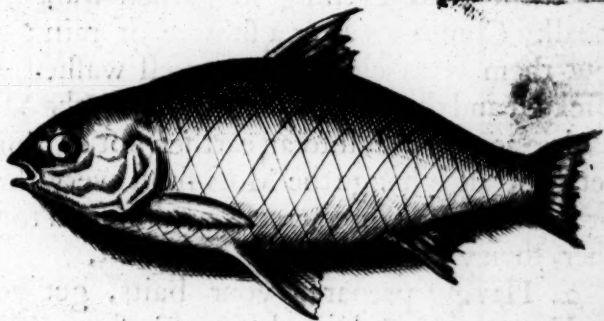
But though some do not, yet the *French* esteem this Fish highly, and to that end have this Proverb, *He that hath Breames in his pond is*  
able



able to bid his friend welcome. And it is noted, that the best part of a Breame is his belly and head.

Some say, that *Breams* and *Roaches* will mix their eggs, and melt together, and so there is in many places a Bastard breed of *Breams*, that never come to be either large or good, but very numerous.

The Baits good to catch this *Bream* are ma-



ny. First, paste made of brown bread and honey, gentles, or the broode of wasps that be young, and then not unlike Gentles; & should be hardened in an oven, or dried on a tile before the fire; or there is at the root of docks, or flags, or rushes in watry places, a worm not unlike a Magot, at which Tench will bite freely. Or he will bite at a Grasshopper with his legs nipt off in June and July, or at several flies under water, which may be found on flags that grow near

neer to the water side. I doubt not but that there be many other baits that are good, but I will turn them all into this most excellent one, either for a *Carp* or *Bream*, in any river or Mere: it was given to me by a most honest and excellent Angler, and hoping you will prove both, I will impart it to you.

1. Let your bait be as big a red worm as you can find, without a knot. Get a pint or quart of them in an evening in garden walks, or chalky Commons after a showre of rain; and put them with clean Mofse well washed and picked, and the water squeezed out of the Moss as drie as you can, into an earthen pot or pipkin set drie, and change the Moss fresh every three or four daies for three weeks or a moneth together, then your bait will be at the best.

2. Having prepared your baits, get your tackling ready and fitted after this sort. Take three long Angling Rods, and as many and more silk, or silk and hair lines, and as many large Swan or Goose-quil floats. Then take a piece of Lead made after this manner, and fasten them to the lower ends of your Lines. Then fasten your link-hook also to the lead, and to the end of your Line, let there be about a foot or ten inches between the lead and the hook, but be sure the lead be heavie enough to sink the floate or quil under water, and not the quil to bear up the

the lead. Note, that your link next the hook may be smaller then the rest of your line, if you dare adventure for fear of taking the *Pike* or *Pearch*, who will assuredly visit your hooks, till they be taken out (as I will shew you afterwards) before either Carp or Bream will come near to bite. Note also, that when the worm is well baited, it will crawle up and down, as far as the lead will give leave, which much inticeth the Fish to bite without suspicion.

3. Having thus prepared your baits, and fitted your tackling, repaire to the River, where you have seen them to swim in skuls or shoales in the Summer time in a hot afternoon, about three or four of the clock, and watch their going forth of their holes and returning (which you may well discern) for they return about four of the clock most of them seeking food at the bottom, yet one or two will lie on the top of the water, rolling and tumbling themselves, whilst the rest are under him at the bottom, and so you shall perceive him to keep Sentinel; then mark where he plaies most, and staies longest, (which commonly is in the broadest and deepest place of the River) and there, or near thereabouts, at a clear bottom, and a convenient landing place, take one of your Angles ready fitted as aforesaid, and sound the bottom, about eight or ten foot deep, two yards from the bank is the best. Then consider with your self whether

ther that water will rise or fall by the next morning by reason of any water-mills near, and according to your discretion take the depth of the place, where you mean after to cast your ground-bait; and to Fish, to half an inch; that the lead lying on or near the ground-bait, the top of the floate may onely appear upright half an inch above the water.

Thus you having found and fitted for the place and depth thereof, then go home and prepare your ground-bait, which is next to the fruit of your labours to be regarded.

*The Ground-Bait.*

You shall take a peck, or a peck and a half (according to the greatness of the stream, and deepness of the water, where you mean to angle) of sweet gross-ground barley malt, and boil it in a kettle (one or two warmes is enough) then strain it through a bag into a tub (the liquor whereof hath often done my horse much good;) and when the bag and malt is near cold, take it down to the water-side about eight or nine of the clock in the evening, and not before; cast in two parts of your ground-bait, squeezed hard between both your hands, it will sink presently to the bottom, and be sure it may rest in the very place where you mean to angle; if the stream run hard or move a little, cast your malt in handfuls the higher upwards the stream. You may

may between your hands close the Malt so fast in handfuls, that the water will hardly part it with the fall,

Your ground thus baited and tackling fitted, leave your bag with the rest of your tackling, and ground-bait near the sporting-place all night, and in the morning about three or four of the clock visit the water-side (but not too near) for they have a Watch-man, and are watchful themselves.

Then gently take one of your three rods, and bait your hook, casting it over your ground-bait, & gently and secretly draw it to you til the Lead rests about the middle of the ground-bait.

Then take a second Rod and cast in about a yard above, and your third a yard below the first Rod, and stay the Rods in the ground, but go your self so far from the water side, that you perceive nothing but the top of the floats, which you must watch most diligently, then when you have a bite you shall perceive the top of your float to sink suddenly into the water; yet neverthelesse be not too hasty to run to your Rods, untill you see that Line goes clear away, then creep to the water-side, and give as much Line as possibly you can; if it be a Carp or Bream they will go to the farther side of the River, then strike gently, and hold your Rod at a bent a little while; for if you both pull, you are sure to lose your Game, for either your line,

or

or hook, or hold will break ; and after you have overcome them they will make noble sport, and are very shie to be landed. The Carp is far stronger and mettlesome than the Bream.

Much more is to be observed in this kind of Fish and Fishing, but it is far fitter for experience and discourse than paper. Only thus much is necessary for you to know, and to be mindful and careful of, That if the Pike or Pearch do breed in that River, they will be sure to bite first, and must first be taken. And for the most part they are very large, and will repair to your ground-bait, not that they will eat of it, but will feed and sport themselves amongst the young Fry, that gather about, and hover over the Bait.

The way to discern the Pike and to take him, if you mistrust your Bream-hook, (for I have taken a Pike a yard long several times at my Bream-hooks, and sometimes he hath had the luck to share my line.)

Take a small Bleak, or Roche, or Gudgeon, and bait it, and set it alive among your Rods two foot deep from the Cork, with a little red worm on the point of the hook, then take a few crums of White-bread, or some of the ground-bait, and sprinkle it gently amongst your Rods. If Mr. Pike be there, then the little Fish will skip out of the water, but the live-set Bait is sure to be taken.

Thus



Thus continue your sport from four in the morning till eight, and if it be a gloomy windy day, they will bite all day long. But this is too long to stand to your rods at one place, & it will spoil your evening sport that day; which is this,

About four of the clock in the Afternoon repair to your baited place, and as soon as you come to the water side, cast in one half of the rest of your ground-bait, and stand off: then whilst the Fish are gathering together, (for there they will most certainly come for their Supper) you may take a pipe of Tobacco; and then in with your three rods as in the morning: You will find excellent sport that evening till eight of the clock; then cast in the residue of your ground-bait, and next morning by four of the clock visit them again for four hours, which is the best sport of all; and after that let them rest till you and your friends have a mind to more sport.

From *St. James* Tide untill *Bartholomew* Tide is the best, when they have had all the Summers food, they are the fattest.

Observe lastly, That after three or four dayes fishing together your game will be very shie and wary, and you shall hardly get above a bite or two at a baiting; then your onely way is to desist from your sport about two or three dayes; and in the mean time (on the place you late baited, and again intend to bait) you shall

N

take

take a turf of green, but short grasse, as big or bigger than a round Trencher; to the top of this turf, on the green side, you shall with a Needle and green thred fasten one by one as many little red worms as will near cover all the turf: Then take a round board or trencher, make a hole in the middle thereof, and through the turf placed on the board or trencher, with a string or cord as long as is fitting, tied to a pole, let it down to the bottom of the water for the Fish to feed upon without disturbance about two or three dayes; and after that you have drawn it away, you may fall to and enjoy your former recreation.

*B. A.*

## CHAP. XI.

*Observations of the Tench, and advice how to angle for him.*

*Pisc.* **T**HE *Tench*, the Physician of Fishes, is observed to love Ponds better than Rivers, and to love pits better than either; yet *Cambden* observes there is a River in *Dorset-shire* that abounds with Tenches; but doubtlesse they retire to the most deep and quiet places in it.

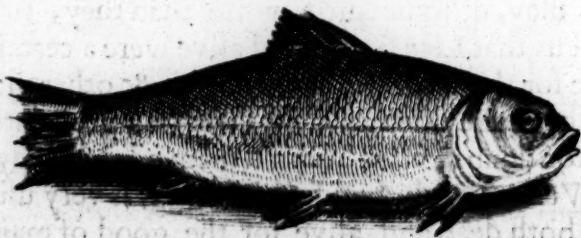
This Fish hath very large Fins, very small and smooth Scales, a red circle about his Eyes, which

which are big and of a gold colour, and that from either angle of his mouth there hangs down a little Barb; in every *Tenches* head there are two little stones, which forreign Physicians make great use of, but he is not commended for wholsome meat, though there be very much use made of them for outward applications. *Randelius* sayes, That at his being at *Rome*, he saw a great cure done by applying a *Tench* to the feet of a very sick man. This he sayes was done after an unusual manner by certain Jews. And it is observed that many of those people have many secrets yet unknown to Christians; secrets that have never yet been written, but have been since the dayes of their *Solomon*, (who knew the nature of all things, even from the Cedar to the Shrub) delivered by tradition from the father to the son, and so from generation to generation without writing, or (unlesse it were casually) without the least communicating them to any other Nation or Tribe: for to do that they account a prophanation. And yet it is thought that they, or some spirit worse than they, first told us, that Lice swallowed alive were a certain cure for the Yellow-Jaundice. This & other medicines were discover'd by them or by revelation, for doubtless we attain'd them not by study.

Well, this fish, besides his eating, is very usefull both dead and alive for the good of mankind. But I will meddle no more with that;

my honest, humble Art teaches no such boldness; there are too many foolish meddlers in Physick and Divinity that think themselves fit to meddle with hidden secrets, and so bring destruction to their followers. I'll not meddle with them farther, then to wish them wiser; and shall tell you next, (for I hope I may be so bold) that the Tench is the Physitian of fishes, to the Pike especially, and that the Pike being either sick or hurt, is cured by the touch of the Tench. And it is observed, that the Tyrant Pike will not be a Wolf to his Physician, but forbears to devour him, though he be never so hungry.

This fish that carries a naturall Balsome in him to cure both himself and others, loves yet to feed in very foule water, and amongst weeds. And yet I am sure he eats pleasantly, and doubtlesse you will think so too if you taste him. And I shall therefore proceed to give you some few, and but a few directions how to catch this *Tench*,



of which I have given you these observations.

He will bite at a Paste made of brown bread and honey, or at a Marsh-worm, or a Lob-worm ; he inclines very much to any paste with which Tar is mixt ; and he will bite also at a smaller worm, with his head nipp'd off, and a Cod-worm put on the hook before that worm ; and I doubt not but that he will also in the three hot months (for in the nine colder he stirs not much) bite at a Flag-worm, or at a green Gentle, but can positively say no more of the Tench, he being a Fish that I have not often Angled for ; but I wish my honest Scholer may, and be ever fortunate when he Fishes.

## CHAP. XII.

*Observations of the Pearch, and directions how to fish for him.*

*Pisc.* **T**HE *Pearch* is a very good, and a very bold biting fish ; He is one of the Fishes of prey, that like the *Pike* and *Trou*, carries his teeth in his mouth, which is very large, and he dare venter to kill and devour severall other kinds of fish : he has a hook't or hog back, which is armed with sharp and stiffe bristles, and all his skin armed or covered over with thick, dry,

hard scales, and hath (which few other Fish have) two Fins on his back. He is so bold, that he will invade one of his own kind, which the Pike will not do willingly, and you may therefore easily believe him to be a bold biter.

The *Pearch* is of great esteem in *Italy* saith *Aldrovandus*, and especially the least are there esteemed a daintie dish. And *Gesner* prefers the *Pearch* and Pike above the *Trout*, or any fresh-water-Fish: he saies the *Germanes* have this Proverb, *More wholsom then a Pearch of Rhine*; and he saies the *River-Pearch* is so wholsome, that Physicians allow him to be eaten by wounded men or men in Feavers, or to Women in Child-bed.

He spawns but once a year, and is by Physicians held very nutritive: yet by many to be hard of digestion: They abound more in the *River Poe* and in *England* (sayes *Randelitius*) then other parts, and have in their brain a stone, which is in ferraing parts sold by Apothecaries, being there noted to be very medicinable against the stone in the reins: These be a part of the commendations which some Philosophical brains have bestowed upon the fresh-water *Pearch*: yet they commend the *Sea-pearch*, which is known by having but one fin on his back, (of which they say, we *English* see but a few) to be a much better fish.

The *pearch* growes slowly, yet will grow, as



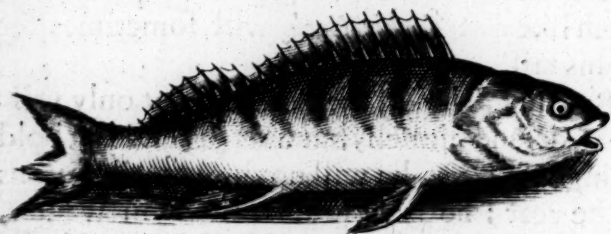
I have been credibly informed, to be almost two foot long ; for my informer told me, such a one was not long since taken by Sir *Abraham Williams*, a Gentleman of worth, and a lover of Angling, that yet lives, and I wish he may : this was a deep bodied Fish : and doubtless durst have devoured a *Pike* of half his own length ; for I have told you, he is a bold Fish, such a one as but for extreme hunger, the *Pike* will not devour ; for to affright the *Pike* and save himself, the *Pearch* will set up his fins, much like as a *Turkie-Cock* will sometimes set up his tail.

But, my Scholer, the *Pearch* is not only valiant to defend himself, but he is (as I said) a bold biting Fish, yet he will not bite at all seasons of the year ; he is verie abstemious in Winter, yet will bite then in the midst of the day if it be warm ; and note that all Fish bite best about the midst of a warm day in Winter, and he hath been observed by some, not usually to bite till the *Mulberry-tree* buds, that is to say, till extreme frosts be past that Spring ; for when the *Mulberry-tree* blossomes, many Gardners observe their forward fruit to be past the danger of Frosts, and some have made the like observation of the *Pearches* biting.

But bite the *Pearch* will, and that very boldly ; and, as one has wittily observed, if there be twentie or fortie in a hole, they may be at one

standing all catch'd one after another ; they being, as he saies, like the wicked of the world, not afraid, though their fellowes and companions perish in their fight. And you may observe, that they are not like the solitary Pike, but love to accompany one another, and march together in troops.

And the baits for this bold Fish



are not many ; I mean, he will bite as well at some, or at any of these three, as at any or all others whatsoever : a *Worm*, a *Minnow*, or a little *Frog* (of which you may find many in hay-time,) and of *worms*, the Dunghil-worm called a *Brandling*, I take to be best, being well scowred in Moïs or Fennel ; or at a worm that lies under a cow-turd with a blewish head. And if you rove for a Pearch with a *Minnow*, then it is best to be alive : you sticking your hook through his back-fin, or a *Minnow* with the  
hook

hook in his upper lip, and letting him swim up and down about mid-water, or a little lower, and you still keeping him to about that depth, by a Cork, which ought not to be a very little one : and the like way you are to Fish for the Pearch with a small frog, your hook being fastned through the skin of his leg, towards the upper part of it : And lastly, I will give you but this advice, that you give the Pearch time enough when he bites, for there was scarce ever any Angler that has given him too much. And now I think best to rest my self, for I have almost spent my spirits with talking so long.

*Venat.* Nay, good Master, one fish more, for you see it rains still, and you know our Angles are like monie put to usurie ; they may thrive, though we sit still and do nothing, but talk and enjoy one another. Come, come the other fish, good Master.

*Pisc.* But Scholer, have you nothing to mixe with this discourse, which now grows both tedious and tiresome ? shall I have nothing from you that seems to have both a good memorie, and a chearful Spirit ?

*Ven.* Yes, Master, I will speak you a Copie of Verses. that were made by Doctor *Donne*, and made to shew the world that he could make soft & smooth Verses when he thought smoothness worth his labour ; and I love them the better, because they allude to Rivers, and fish and fishing. They be these :

*Come*

*Come live with me, and be my Love,  
And we will some new pleasures prove,  
Of golden sands, and Christal brooks,  
With silken lines, and silver hooks.*

*There will the River whispering run,  
Warm'd by the eyes more then the Sun;  
And there th' inamel'd fish will stay,  
Begging themselves they may betray.*

*When thou wilt swim in that live bath,  
Each fish, which every channel hath,  
Most amorously to thee will swim,  
Gladder to catch thee, then thou him.*

*If thou, to be so seen, beest loath  
By Sun or Moon, thou darknest both;  
And if mine eyes have leave to see,  
I need not their light, having thee.*

*Let others freeze with Angling reeds,  
And cut their legs with shels and weeds,  
Or treacherously poor fish beset,  
With strangling snares, or windowy net.*

*Let course bold hands, from slimy nest,  
The bedded fish in banks outwrest,  
Let curious Traitors sleave silk flies,  
To wick poor wandring fishes eyes.*

*For thee, thou needst no such deceit,  
For thou thy self art thine own bait;  
That fish that is not catch thereby,  
Is wiser far, alas, then I.*

*Pisc.* Well remembred, honest Scholer, I thank you for these choice Verses, which I have heard formerly, but had quite forgot, till they were recovered by your happie memorie. Well, being I have now rested my self a little, I will make you some requital, by telling you some observations of the Eele, for it rains still, and because (as you say) our *Angles* are as money put to Use, that thrive when we play, therefore we'll sit still and enjoy our selves a little longer under this *honey-suckle-hedg.*

---

## CHAP. XIII.

*Observations of the Eele, and other fish that want scales, and how to fish for them.*

*Pisc.* **I**T is agreed by most men, that the *Eele* is a most dantie fish; the Romans have esteemed her the *Hellena* of their feasts; and some *The Queen of pleasure.* But most men differ about their breeding: some say they breed by generation as other fish do; and others, that they breed (as some wormes do)

do) of mud, as Rats and Mice, and many other living creatures are bred in *Egypt*, by the overflowing of the River *Nilus*; or out of the putrification of the earth, and divers other waies. Those that deny them to breed by generation as other fish do, ask, if any man ever saw an *Eele* to have a Spawn or Melt? and they are answered, that they may be as certain of their breeding, as if they had seen Spawn: for they say, that they are certain that *Eeles* have all parts fit for generation, like other fish, but so small as not to be easily discerned, by reason of their fatness; but that discerned they may be, and that the He and the She *Eele* may be distinguished by their fins. And *Randelitius* saies; he has seen *Eeles* cling together like *Dew-worms*.

And others say, that *Eeles* growing old, breed other *Eeles* out of the corruption of their own age, which Sir *Francis Bacon* saies, exceeds not ten years. And others say, that as *Pearles* are made of glutinous dew-drops, which are condensed by the Suns heat in those Countries, so *Eeles* are bred of a particular dew falling in the moneths of *May* or *June* on the banks of some particular Ponds or Rivers (apted by nature for that end) which in a few daies is by the Suns heat turned into *Eeles*. And some of the Ancients have called the *Eels* that are thus bred, *The Off-spring of Iove*. I have seen in the beginning of *July*, in a River not far from *Canterbury*, some parts



parts of it covered over with young *Eeles*, about the thickness of a straw; and these *Eeles* did lie on the top of that water, as thick as motes are said to be in the Sun: and I have heard the like of other Rivers, as namely in *Severn*, (where they are call'd *Yelvers*) and in a pond or mere near unto *Stafford-shire*, where about a set time in Summer, such small *Eeles* abound so much, that many of the poorer sort of people, that inhabit near to it, take such *Eeles* out of this Mere, with sieves or sheets, and make a kind of *Eele-cake* of them, and eat it like as bread. And *Gesner* quotes venerable *Bede* to say, that in *England* there is an Iland called *Ely*, by reason of the innumerable number of *Eeles* that breed in it. But that *Eeles* may be bred as some worms, and some kind of *Bees* and *Wasps* are, either of dew, or out of the corruption of the earth, seems to be made probable by the *Barnacles* and young *Goslings* bred by the Suns heat and the rotten planks of an old Ship, and hatched of trees; both which are related for truths by *Dubartas* and *Lobel*, and also by our learned *Cambden*, and laborious *Gerrard* in his *Herball*.

It is said by *Randelinius*, that those *Eeles* that are bred in Rivers that relate to, or be nearer to the Sea, never return to the fresh waters (as the *Salmon* does alwaies desire to do) when they have once tasted the salt water; and I do the more easily believe this, because I am certain  
that

that powdered Bief is a most excellent bait to catch an *Eele*; and though Sir *Francis Bacon* will allow the *Eeles* life to be but ten years; yet he in his History of Life and Death, mentions a *Lamprey* belonging to the *Roman* Emperour to be made tame, and so kept for almost threescore years: and that such useful and pleasant observations were made of this *Lamprey*, that *Crassus* the Oratour (who kept her) lamented her death. And we read (in Doctor *Hackwel*) that *Horrensus* was seen to weep at the death of a *Lamprey* that he had kept long, and loved exceedingly.

It is granted by all, or most men, that *Eeles*, for about six moneths (that is to say, the six cold moneths of the year) stir not up and down, neither in the Rivers nor the Pools in which they usually are, but get into the soft earth or mud, and there many of them together bed themselves, and live without feeding upon any thing (as I have told you some *Swallowes* have been observed to do in hollow-trees for those six cold moneths;) and this the *Eel* and *Swallow* do, as not being able to endure winter weather: For *Gesner* quotes *Albertus* to say, that in the year 1125 (that years winter being more cold then usually) *Eeles* did by natures instinct get out of the water into a stack of hay in a Meadow upon drie ground, and there bedded themselves, but yet at last a frost kil'd them.

And

And our *Cambden* relates, that in *Lancashire* Fishes are dig'd out of the earth with Spades, where no water is near to the place. I shall say little more of the *Eele*, but that, as it is observed he is impatient of cold; so it hath been observed, that in warm weather an *Eele* has been known to live five daies out of the water.

And lastly, let me tell you that some curious searchers into the natures of Fish, observe that there be several sorts or kinds of *Eeles*, as the *silver Eele*, and green or greenish *Eele*, (with which the River of *Thames* abounds, and those are called *Gregs*;) and a *blackish Eele*, whose head is more flat and bigger than ordinary *Eeles*; and also an *Eele* whose Fins are reddish, and but seldome taken in this Nation, (and yet taken sometimes :) These several kinds of *Eeles* are (say some) diversly bred, as namely, out of the corruption of the earth, and by dew, and other waies, (as I have said to you :) and yet it is affirmed by some for a certain, that the *silver Eele* by generation, but not by Spawning as other Fish do, but that her Brood come alive from her, little five *Eeles* no bigger nor longer than a pin; and I have had too many testimonies of this to doubt the truth of it my self, and if I thought it needful I might prove it, but I think it is needlesse.

And this *Eele* of which I have said so much to you, may be caught with divers kinds of  
Baits ;

Baits ; as namely with powdered Bief, with a *Lob* or *Garden-worm*, with a *Minnow*, or gut of a *Hen*, *Chicken*, or the guts of any *Fish*, or with almost any thing, for he is a greedie *Fish* ; but the *Eele* may be caught especially with a little, a very little *Lamprey*, which some call a *Pride*, and may in the hot moneths be found many of them in the River *Thames*, and in many mud-heaps in other Rivers, yea, almost as usually as one finds worms in a dunghill.

Next note, that the *Eele* seldom stirs in the day, but then hides himself, and therefore he is usually caught by night with one of these baits of which I have spoken, and then caught by laying hooks, which you are to fasten to the bank or twigs of a tree; or by throwing a string crosse the stream with manie hooks at it, and baited with the aforesaid Baits, and a clod, or plummet, or stone, thrown into the River with this line, that so you may in the morning find it near to some fixt place, and then take it up with a *Drag-hook* or otherwise: but these things are indeed too common to be spoken of, and an hours fishing with any Angler will teach you better, both for these and many other common things in the practical part of *Angling*, than a weeks discourse. I shall therefore conclude this direction for taking the *Eele*, by telling you, that in a warm day in Summer I have taken many a good *Eele* by *snigling*,  
and

and have been much pleased with that sport.

And because you that are but a young Angler know not what *snigling* is, I will now teach it to you. You remember I told you that Eeles do not usuallie stir in the day time, for then they hide themselves under some covert, or under boards or plancks about Floud-gates, or Weires, or Mills, or in holes in the River banks; and you observing your time in a warm day, when the water is lowest, may take a strong small hook tied to a strong line, or to a string about a Yard long, and then into one of these holes, or between any boards about a Mill, or under any great stone or planck, or any place where you think an Eele may hide or shelter her self, there with the help of a short stick put in your Bait, but leasurely, and as far as you may conveniently; and it is scarce to be doubted, but that if there be an Eele within the sight of it, the Eele will bite instantly, and as certainly gorge it: and you need not doubt to have him if you pull him not out of the hole too quickly, but pull him out by degrees, for he lying folded double in his hole, will with the help of his tail break all, unlesse you give him time to be wearied with pulling, and so get him out by degrees, not pulling too hard.

And to commute for your great patience,  
I shall next tell you how to make this Eele



a most excellent dish of meat :

First, wash him in water and salt, then pull off his skin below his vent or navel, and not much farther : having done that, take out his guts as clean as you can, but wash him not : then give him three or four scotches with a knife, and then put into his belly and those scotches sweet herbs, an Anchovy, and a little Nutmeg grated or cut very small, and your herbs and Anchovis must also be cut very small, and mixt with good butter and salt : having done this, then pull his skin over him all but his head, which you are to cut off, to the end you may tye his skin about that part where his head grew, and it must be so tyed as to keep all his moisture within his skin : and having done this, tye him with Tape or Pack-thread to a spit, and roste him leasurely, and baste him with water and salt till his skin breaks, and then with butter : and having  
rosted



rosted him enough, let what was put into his belly,  
and what he drips be his sauce.

S. F.

But now let me tell you, that though the Eele thus drest be not only excellent good, but more harmlesse then any other way, yet it is certain, that Physicians account the Eele dangerous meat; I will advise you therefore, as Solomon saies of Hony, Prov. 25. *Hast thou found it, eat no more then is sufficient, lest thou surfeit, for it is not good to eat much hony.* And let me add this that the uncharitable *Italian* bids us, *Give Eels, and no wine to our enemies.*

And I will beg a little more of your attention to tell you that *Aldrovandus* and divers Physitians commend the Eele very much for medicine though not for meat. But let me tell you one observation, That the Eele is never out of season, as *Trouts* and most other fish are at set times, at least most Eeles are not.

I might here speak of many other Fish whose shape and nature are much like the Eele, and frequent both the *Sea* and fresh Rivers; as namely the *Lamprel*, the *Lamprey* and the *Lamperne*; as also of the mightie *Congre*, taken often in *Severne*, about *Glocester*, and in what high esteem manie of them are for the curiositie of their taste; but these are not so proper to be talk'd of by me, because they make us Anglers

no sport, therefore I will let them alone as the Jewes do, to whom they are forbidden by their Law.

And Scholer, there is also a Flounder, a Sea-fish, which will wander very far into fresh Rivers, and there lose himself, and dwell and thrive to a hands breadth, and almost twice so long, a Fish without scales, and most excellent meat, and a Fish that affords much sport to the Angler, with any small worm, but especially a little blewish worm, gotten out of Marsh ground or Meadows, which should be well scowred; but this though it be most excellent meat, yet it wants scales, and is as I told you therefore an abomination to the Jewes.

But Scholer, there is a fish that they in *Lancashire* boast very much of, called a *Char*, taken there, (and I think there only,) in a Mere called, *Winander Mere*; a Mere, saies *Campden*, that is the largest in this Nation, being ten miles in length, & as smooth in the bottom as if it were paved with polliht marble: this fish never exceeds fifteen or sixteen inches in length; and 'tis spotted like a *Trout*, and has scarce a bone, but on the back: but this, though I do not know whether it make the Angler sport, yet I would have you take notice of it, because it is a raritie, & of so high esteem with persons of great note.

Nor would I have you ignorant of a rare fish, called a *Guinad*, of which I shall tell you what  
*Campden*

*Campden*, and others speak. The River *Dee* (which runs by *Chester*,) springs in *Merioneth-shire*, and as it runs toward *Chester*, it runs through *Pemle-Mere*, which is a large water: And it is observed, that though the river *Dee* abounds with *Salmon*, and *Pemle-Mere* with the *Guiniad*, yet there is never any *Salmon* caught in the *Mere*, nor a *Guiniad* in the River. And now my next observation shall be of the *Barbel*.

## CH A P. XIV.

*Observations of the Barbel, and directions how to fish for him.*

*Pisc.* **T**HE *Barbel* is so called (saies *Gesner*) by reason of his Barb or Warts at his mouth, which is under his nose or chaps. He is one of those leather-mouthed Fish that I told you of, that verie seldom break his hold if he be once hook'd: but he will often break both rod and line if he proves to be a big one.

But the *Barbel*, though he be of a fine shape, and looks big, yet is not accounted the best fish to eat, neither for his wholsomness nor his taste: But the Male is reputed much better then the Female, whose Spawn is verie hurtful, as I will presently declare to you.

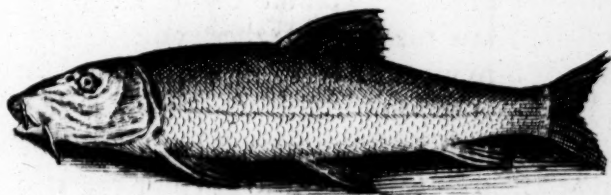
They flock together like sheep, and are at worst in *April*, about which time they spawn, but quickly grow to be in season. He is able to live in the strongest swifts of the Water, and in Summer love the shallowest and sharpest streams; and loves to lurk under weeds, and to feed on gravel against a rising ground, and will root and dig in the sands with his nose like a hog, and there nests himself: yet sometimes he retires to deep and swift Bridges, or Floud-gates, or Weires, where he will nest himself amongst piles, or in hollow places, and take such hold of mosse or weeds, that be the water never so swift, it is not able to force him from the place that he contends for. This is his constant custome in Summer, when he and most living creatures sport themselves in the Sun, but at the approach of Winter, then he forsakes the swift streams and shallow waters, and by degrees retires to those parts of the River that are quiet and deeper; in which places (and I think about that time) he Spawnes, and as I have formerly told you, with the help of the Melter, hides his Spawn or eggs in holes, which they both dig in the gravel, and then they mutually labour to cover it with the same sand, to prevent it from being devoured by other fish.

There be such store of this fish in the River *Danubie*, that *Randelinus* saies, they may in some places of it, and in some moneths of the year,

be

be taken by those that dwell near to the River, with their hands, eight or ten load at a time ; he saies, they begin to be good in *May*, and that they cease to be so in *August*, but it is found to be otherwise in this Nation : but thus far we agree with him, that the Spawn of a *Barbell*, if it be not poison as he saies, yet that it is dangerous meat, and especially in the moneth of *May* ; which is so certain that *Gessner* and *Gafius* declare, it had an ill effect upon them even to the indangering of their lives.

This fish is of a fine cast and handsome shape, small scales, and plac'd after a most exact and curious manner,



and, as I told you, may be rather said not to be ill, then to be good meat ; the *Chub* and he have (I think) both lost a part of their credit by ill cookery, they being reputed the worst or courtest of fresh-water-fish : but the *Barbel* affords

an *Angler* choice sport, being a lustie and a cunning Fish; so lustie and cunning as to endanger the breaking of the *Anglers* line, by running his head forcibly towards any covert, or hole, or bank: and then striking at the line, to break it off with his tail (as is observed by *Plutark*, in his Book *De industria animalium*) and also so cunning to nibble and suck off your worm close to the hook, and yet avoid the letting the hook come into his mouth.

The *Barbel* is also curious for his baits, that is to say, that they be clean and sweet; that is to say, to have your worms well scowred, and not kept in sowre and mustie mosse, for he is a curious feeder, for at a well-scowred Lob-worm, he will bite as boldly as at any bait, and specially, if the night or two before you Fish for him, you shall bait the places where you intend to Fish for him with big worms cut into pieces: and note, that none did ever over-bait the place, nor Fish too early or too late for a *Barbel*. And the *Barbel* will bite also at Gentles, which (not being too much scowred, but green) are a choice bait for him: and so is cheese, which is not to be too hard, but kept a day or two in a wet linnen cloth to make it tough; with this you may also bait the water a day or two before you Fish for the *Barbel*, and be much the likelier to catch store, and if the cheese were laid in clarified honey a short time before (as namely,

an



an hour or two) you were still the likelier to catch Fish: some have directed to cut the cheese into thin pieces, and toast it, and then tie it on the hook with fine silk: and some advise to Fish for the *Barbel* with Sheeps tallow and soft cheese beaten or work'd into a Paste, and that it is choicely good in *August*, and I believe it: but doubtlesse the Lob-worm well scowred, and the Gentle not too much scowred, and cheese ordered as I have directed, are baits enough, and I think will serve in any moneth; though I shall commend any Angler that tries conclusions, and is industrious to improve the Art. And now, my honest Scholer, the long shewre, and my tedious Discourse are both ended together: And I shall give you but this Observation, that when you fish for a *Barbell*, your Rod and Line be both long, and of good strength, for (as I told you) you will find him a heavie and a dogged Fish to be dealt withall, yet he seldom or never breaks his hold if he be once stricken. And if you would know more of fishing for the *Umber* or *Barbel*, get into favour with Doctor *Sheldon*, whose skill is above others; and of that the poor that dwell about him have a comfortable experience.

And now lets go and see what interest the *Trouts* will pay us for letting our *Angle-rods* lie so long, and so quietly in the water for their use. Come, Scholer, which will you take up?

*Ven.*

*Ven.* Which you think fit, Master.

*Pisc.* Why, you shall take up that ; for I am certain by viewing the Line, it has a Fish at it. Look you, Scholer : well done. Come now, take up the other too ; well, now you may tell my brother *Peter* at night, that you have caught a lease of *Trouts* this day. And now lets move toward our lodging, and drink a draught of *Red-Cowes Milk*, as we go, and give pretty *Maudlin* and her honest mother a brace of *Trouts* for their supper.

*Venat.* Master, I like your motion very well, and I think it is now about milking time, and yonder they be at it.

*Pisc.* God speed you, good woman, I thank you both for our Songs last night ; I and my companion have had such fortune a Fishing this day, that we resolve to give you and *Maudlin* a brace of *Trouts* for supper, and we will now taste a draught of your *Red-Cowes milk*.

*Milkw.* Marrie, and that you shall with all my heart, and I will be still your debtor when you come this way ; if you will but speak the word, I will make you a good *Sillabub*, of new Verjuice, and then you may sit down in a *hay-cock* and eat it, and *Maudlin* shall sit by and sing you the good old Song of the *Hunting in Chevy Chase*, or some other good Ballad, for she hath good store of them : *Maudlin* my honest *Maudlin* hath a notable memory, and she  
thinks

thinks nothing too good for you, because you be such honest men.

*Venat.* We thank you, and intend once in a moneth to call upon you again, and give you a little warning, and so good night; good night

*Maudlin.* And now, good Master, lets lose no time; but tell me somewhat more of Fishing, and if you please, first someting of Fishing for a *Gudgion*.

*Pisc.* I will, honest Scholer.

## CHAP. XV.

*Observations of the Gudgion, the Ruffe and the Bleak, and how to fish for them.*

**T**He *Gudgion* is reputed a Fish of excellent taste, and to be very wholesome: he is of a fine shape, of a silver colour, and beautified with black spots both on his body and tail. He breeds two or three times in the year, and alwaies in Summer. He is commended for a Fish of excellent nourishment: the *Germanes* call him *Groundling*, by reason of his feeding on the ground; and he there feasts himself in sharp streams, and on the gravel, He and the *Barbel* both feed so, and do not hunt for flies at any time, as most other Fishes do: he is an excellent fish to enter a young

young Angler, being easie to be taken with a small red worm, on or very near to the ground. He is one of those leather-mouthed fish that has his teeth in his throat, and will hardly be lost off from the hook if he be once stricken: they be usually scattered up and down every River in the shallows, in the heat of Summer; but in *Autumne*, when the weeds begin to grow sowre or rot, and the weather colder, then they gather together, and get into the deeper parts of the water; and are to be Fished for there, with your hook alwaies touching the ground, if you Fish for him with a flote, or with a cork: But many will Fish for the *Gudgion* by hand, with a running line upon the ground, without a cork, as a *Trout* is Fished for, and it is an excellent way, if you have a gentle rod and as gentle a hand.

There is also another Fish called a *Pope*, and by some a *Ruffe*, a Fish that is not known to be in some Rivers; it is much like the *Pearch* for his shape, and taken to be better then the *Pearch*, but will not grow to be bigger then a *Gudgion*: he is an excellent Fish, no Fish that swims is of a pleasanter taste, and he is also excellent to enter a young *Angler*, for he is a greedy biter, and they will usually lie abundance of them together in one reserved place where the water is deep, and runs quietly, and an easie Angler, if he has found where they lie, may catch

catch forty or fifty, or sometimes twice so many at a standing.

You must Fish for him with a small red-worm, and if you bait the ground with earth it is excellent.

There is also a *Bleak*, or fresh-water-Sprat, a Fish that is ever in motion, and therefore called by some the *River-Swallow*; for just as you shall observe the *Swallow* to be most evenings in Summer ever in motion, making short and quick turnes when he flies to catch Flies in the aire, (by which he lives,) so does the *Bleak* at the top of the water. *Ausonius* would have him called Bleak from his whitish colour: his back is of a pleasant sad or Sea-water-green, his belly white and shining as the Mountains snow; and doubtlesse though he have the fortune (which vertue has in poor people,) to be neglected, yet the *Bleak* ought to be much valued, though we want *Allamot* salt, and the skill that the *Italians* have to turn them into Anchovis. This fish may be caught with a *Pater-noster* line, that is, six or eight very small hooks tyed along the line one half foot above the other: I have seen five caught thus at one time, and the bait has been Gentles, then which none is better.

Or this Fish may be caught with a fine small artificial flie, which is to be a very sad brown colour, and very small, and the hook answerable. There is no better sport than whipping for

for *Bleaks* in a boat or on a banck in the swift water in a Summers evening, with a Hazle top about five or six foot long, and a line twice the length of the Rod. I have heard Sir *Henry Wotton* say, that there be many that in *Italy* will catch *Swallows* so, or especially *Martins*, (the *Bird-angler* standing on the top of a Steeple to do it, and with a line twice so long as I have spoken of :) And let me tell you, Scholer, that both *Martins* and *Bleaks* be most excellent meat.

And let me tel you, that I have known a Hern that did constantly frequent one place, caught with a hook baited with a big Minnow or a small Gudgeon. The line and hook must be strong, and tied to some loose staff so big as she cannot flie away with it, a line not exceeding two Yards.

---

## CHAP. XVI.

*Is of nothing, or that which is nothing worth.*

**M**Y purpose was to give you some direction concerning *Roach* and *Dace*, and some other inferiour Fish, which make the Angler excellent sport, for you know there is more pleasure in hunting the Hare than in eating her : but I will forbear at this time to say any more, because you see yonder



der comes our brother *Peter* and honest *Coridon* ; but I will promise you, that as you and I fish and walk to morrow towards *London*, if I have now forgotten any thing that I can then remember, I will not keep it from you.

Well met, Gentlmen, this is lucky that we meet so just together at this very door. Come Hostess, where are you ? is Supper ready ? come, first give us drink, and be as quick as you can, for I believe we are all very hungrie. Well, brother *Peter* and *Coridon*, to you both ; come drink, and tell me *what luck of fish* : we two have caught but ten Trouts, of which my Scholer caught three ; look here's eight, and a brace we gave away : we have had a most pleasant day for fishing and talking, and are returned home both wearie and hungrie, and now meat and rest will be pleasant.

*Pet.* And *Coridon* and I have not had an unpleasant day, and yet I have caught but five Trouts ; for indeed we went to a good honest Ale-house, and there we plaid at Shovel-board half the day ; all the time that it rained we were there, and as merrie as they that fished, and I am glad we are now with a drie house over our heads, for hark how it rains and blows. Come Hostess, give us more Ale, and our supper with what haste you may ; and when we have sup'd let us have your Song, *Piscator*, and the Ketch that your Scholer promised us, or else *Coridon* will be dogged.

*Pisc.*

*Pisc.* Nay, I will not be worse than my word, you shall not want my Song, and I hope I shall be perfect in it.

*Venat.* And I hope the like for my Ketch, which I have readie too, and therefore lets go merrily to supper, and then have a gentle touch at singing and drinking; but the last with moderation.

*Cor.* Come, now for your Song, for we have fed heartily. Come Hostess, lay a few more sticks on the fire, and now sing when you will.

*Pisc.* Well then, here's to you *Coridon*, and now for my Song.

*Oh the gallant Fishers life,  
It is the best of any,  
'Tis full of pleasure, void of strife,  
And 'tis belov'd of many :*

*Other joyes  
are but toyes,  
onely this  
lawful is,  
for our skill  
breeds no ill,  
but content and pleasure.*

*In a morning up we rise  
Ere Aurora's peeping,  
Drink a cup to wash our eyes,  
Leave the sluggard sleeping :*

*Then*

*Then we go  
to and fro,  
with our knacks  
at our backs,  
to such streams  
as the Thames,  
if we have the leasure.*

*When we please to walk abroad  
For our recreation,  
In the fields is our abode;  
Full of delectation :*

*Where in a brook  
with a hook,  
or a Lake,  
fish we take,  
there we sit,  
for a bit,  
till we fish intangle.*

*We have Gentles in a horn;  
We have paste and worms too,  
We can watch both night and morn;  
Suffer rain and storms too :*

*None do here  
use to swear,  
oaths do fray  
fish away,  
we sit still,  
watch our quill;  
Fishers must not rangle.*

*If the Suns excessive heat  
 Make our bodies swelter,  
 To an Osier hedge we get  
 For a friendly shelter,*

*Where in a dike  
 Pearch or Pike,  
 Roch or Dace  
 we do chase,  
 Bleak or Gudgion  
 without grudging,  
 we are still contended.*

*Or we sometimes passe an hour  
 Under a green Willow,  
 That defends us from a showre,  
 Making earth our pillow,*

*There we may  
 think and pray  
 before death  
 stops our breath :  
 other joyes  
 are but toyes,  
 and to be lamented.*

JO. CHALKHILL.

*Venat.* Well sung, Master, this daies fortune  
 and pleasure, and this nights company and song,  
 do all make me more and more in love with  
*angling.* Gentlemen, my Master left me alone for  
 an hour this day, and I verily believe he reti-  
 red himself from talking with me, that he might  
 be

be so perfect in this song: was it not Master?

*Pisc.* Yes indeed, for it is many Years since I learn'd it, and having forgotten a part of it, I was forced to patch it up by the help of mine own Invention, who am not excellent at Poetrie, as my part of the song may testifie: But of that I will say no more, lest you should think I mean by discommending it to beg your commendations of it. And therefore without replications lets hear your Ketch, Scholer, which I hope will be a good one, for you are both Musical, and have a good fancie to boot.

*Venat.* Marry and that you shall, and as freely as I would have my honest Master tell me some more secrets of Fish and Fishing as we walk and fish towards *London* to morrow. But Master, first let me tell you, that that very hour which you were absent from me, I sate down under a *Willow-tree* by the water side, and considered what you had told me of the Owner of that pleasant Meadow in which you then left me; that he had a plentiful estate, and not a heart to think so; that he had at this time many Law-sutes depending, and that they both damp'd his mirth, and took up so much of his time and thoughts, that he himself had not leisure to take the sweet content that I (who pretended no title to them,) took in his fields; for I could there sit quietly, and looking on the water, see some Fishes sport themselves in the

silver streams, others leaping at Flyes of severall shapes and colours ; looking on the Hills, could behold them spotted with Woods and Groves ; looking down the Medows, could see here a Boy gathering *Lillies* and *Lady-smocks*, and there a Girle cropping *Culverkeyes* and *Cowslips*, all to make Garlands futable to this pleasant Month of *May* : these and many other Field-flowers, so perfumed the aire, that I thought that very Meadow like the Field in *Sicily* (of which *Di-dorus* speaks) where the perfumes arising from the place, makes all dogs that hunt in it, to fall off, and to lose their hottest sent. I say, as I thus fate joying in mine owne happy condition, and pitying this poor rich man, that ought this, and many other pleasant Groves and Meadows about me, I did thankfully remember what my Saviour said, that *the meek possess the earth* ; or rather, they injoy what the other possess and injoy not, for Anglers and meek quiet-spirited-men, are free from those high, those restlesse thoughts which corrode the sweets of life ; and they, and they onely can say as the Poet has pappily exprest it:

*Hail blest estate of lowlinesse !*

*Happy enjoyment of such minds,*

*As rich in self-contentednesse,*

*Can, like the reeds in roughest winds,*

*By yielding make that blow but smal*

*At which proud Oaks and Cedars fal.*

There



There came also into my mind at that time, certain Verses in praise of a mean estate, and an humble mind, they were written by *Phineas Fletcher* : an excellent Divine, and an excellent Angler, and the Author of excellent Piscatory Eglogues, in which you shall see the picture of this good mans mind.

*No empty hopes, no Courtly fears him fright,  
No begging wants, his middle fortune bite,  
But sweet content exiles both misery and spite.*

*His certain life, that never can deceive him,  
Is full of thousand sweets, and rich content :  
The smooth-leav'd Beeches in the field receive him,  
With coolest shade, till moon-tides heat be spent :*

*His life is neither tost in boisterous Seas,  
Or the vexations world, or lost in slothfull ease ;  
Pleas'd & ful blest he lives, when he his God can please.*

*His bed more safe then soft yields quiet sleeps,  
While by his side his faithfull Spouse has place,  
His little son into his bosom creeps,  
The lively picture of his fathers face.*

*His humble house, or poor state ne're torment him,  
Less he could like, if less his God had lent him, (him.  
And when he dies, green turfs do for a tomb content*

Gentlemen, these were a part of the thoughts that then possesst me, and I there made a conversion of a piece of an old Ketch, and added more to it, fitting them to be sung by us anglers: come Master, you can sing wel, you must sing a part of it as it is in this paper.



# The ANGLERS Song.

For two Voyces, Treble and Basse. CANTUS. Set by Mr. Henry Lawes.

**M**

An's life is but vain; for 'tis subject to pain, and sorrow,

and short as a bubble; 'tis a hodge podge of busines, and money, and

care, and care, and money, and trouble, But we'll take no care when the

weather proves fair, nor will we vex now though it rain; we'll banish

all sorrow, and sing till to morrow, and Angle, and Angle again.



The ANGLERS Song.

BASS & S.

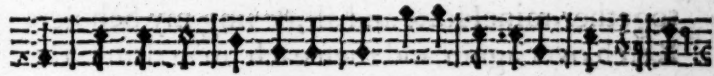
Set by Mr. Henry Lawes. For two Voices.

M

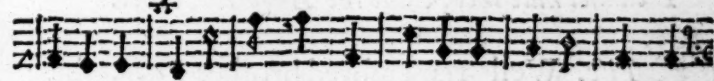
An's life is but vain; for 'tis subject to pain and sorrow, and



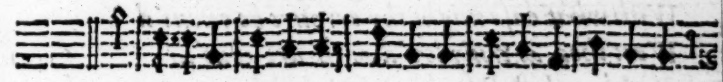
Short as a bubble, 'tis a hodge podge of business, and money, and care,



and care, and money, & trouble. But we'll take no care when the wea-



ther proves fair, nor will we vex now though it rain; we'll banish all



sorrow, and sing till to-morrow, and Angle and Angle again.

*Pet.* I marrie Sir, this is Musick indeed, this has cheer'd my heart, and made me to remember fix Verses in praise of Musick, which I will speak to you instantly.

*Musick miraculous Rhetorick, that speak'st sense  
Without a tongue, excelling eloquence;  
With what ease might thy errors be excus'd  
Wert thou as truly lov'd as th' art abus'd?  
But though dull souls neglect, and some reprove thee,  
I cannot hate thee, cause the Angels love thee.*

*Pisc.* Well remembred brother *Peter*, these Verses came seasonably. Come, we will all joyn together, mine Hoste and all, & sing my Scholers Ketch over again, and then each man drink the tother cup and to bed, and thank God we have adry house over our heads.

*Pisc.* Well now, good night to every body.

*Pet.* And so say I.

*Ven.* And so say I.

*Cor.* Good night to you all, and I thank you.

*Pisc.* Good morrow brother *Peter*, and the like to you honest *Coridon*: come, my Hostis saies there is seven shillings to pay, lets each man drink a pot for his mornings draught, and lay down his two shillings, that so my Hostis may not have occasion to repent her self of being so diligent, and using us so kindly.

*Pet.* The motion is liked by every body, and  
so

so Hostis, here's your money, we Anglers are all beholding to you, it will not be long ere I see you again. And now brother *Piscator* I wish you and my brother your Scholer a faire day, and good fortune. Come *Coridon*, this is our way.

---

C H A P. XVI.

*of Roch and Dace, and how to fish for them.  
And of Cadis.*

*Ven.* **G**OOD Master, as we go now towards *London*, be still so courteous as to give me more instructions, for I have severall boxes in my memory in which I will keep them all very safe, there shall not one of them be lost.

*Pisc.* Well Scholer, that I will, and I will hide nothing from you that I can remember, and may help you forward towards a perfection in this Art, and because we have so much time, and I have said so little of *Roch* and *Dace*, I will give you some directions concerning them.

Some say the *Roch* is so called, from *Rutilus*, which they say, signifies red fins: He is a Fish of no great reputation for his dainty taste, and his Spawn is accounted much better then any other

other part of him. And you may take notice, that as the *Carp* is accounted the *Water-Fox*, for his cunning, so the *Roch* is accounted the *Water-sheep* for his simplicity or foolishness. It is noted that the *Roch* and *Dace* recover strength, and grow in season in a fortnight after spawning, the *Barbel* and *Chub* in a month, the *Trout* in four months, and the *Salmon* in the like time, if he gets into the Sea, and after into fresh-water.

*Roches* be accounted much better in the River than in a pond, though ponds usually breed the biggest. But there is a kind of bastard small *Roch* that breeds in Ponds with a very forked tail, and of a very small size, which some say is bred by the *Bream* and right *Roch*, and some Ponds are stored with these beyond belief; and knowing-men know their difference and call them *Ruds*; they differ from the true *Roch* as much as a Herring from a Pilchard, and these bastard breed of *Roch* are now scattered in many Rivers, but I think not in *Thames*, which I believe affords the largest and fattest in this Nation, especially below *London-Bridge*: the *Roch* is a leather-mouth'd Fish, and has a kind of saw-like teeth in his throat. And lastly let me tell you, the *Roch* makes an Angler excellent sport, especially the great *Roches* about *London*, where I think there be the best *Roch-Anglers*, and I think that the best *Trout-Anglers* be in *Derby-shire*.

Next



Next let me tel you, you shall fish for this *roch* in Winter with Paste or Gentles, in *April* with worms or Cadis ; in the very hot moneths with little white snailes, or with flies under-water, for he seldom takes them at the top, though the Dace will. In many of the hot moneths, *Roches* may also be caught thus : Take a *May-fly* or *Ant-fly*, sink him with a little lead to the bottom near to the piles or posts of a *Bridg*, or near to any posts of a *Weire*, I mean any deep place where *Roches* lie quietly, and then pull your flie up very leisurely, and usually a *Roch* will follow your bait to the very top of the water and gaze on it there, and run at it and take it lest the flie should flie away from him.

I have seen this done at *Windsor* and *Henly-Bridg*, and great store of *Roch* taken, and sometimes a *Dace* or *Chub* ; and in *August* you may Fish for them with a Paste made onely of the crumbs of bread, which should be of pure fine *Manchet* ; and that must be so tempered betwixt your hands till it be both soft and tough too ; a very little water, and time, and labour, and clean hands will make it a most excellent paste : But when you Fish with it, you must have a small hook, a quick eye, and a nimble hand, or the bait is lost and the fish too ; (if one may lose that which they never had) with this paste, you may, as I said, take both the *Roch* and the *Dace* or *Dare*, for they be much of a kind,  
in

in matter of feeding, cunning, goodnesse and usually in size. And therefore take this generall direction for some other baits which may concern you to take notice of. They will bite almost at any fly, but especially at Ant-flies; concerning which, take this direction, for it is very good.

Take the blackish *Ant-flye* out of the Mole-hill or Ant-hill, in which place you shall find them in the Moneth of *June*, or if that be too early in the year, then doubtless you may find them in *July*, *August*, and most of *September*, gather them alive with both their wings, and then put them into a glasse, that will hold a quart or a pottle; but first, put into the glasse a handful or more of the moist earth out of which you gather them, and as much of the roots of the grasse of the said hillock, and then put in the flies gently, that they lose not their wings, lay a clod of earth over it, and then so many as are put into the glasse without bruising, will live there a moneth or more, and be alwaies in a readinesse for you to Fish with; but if you would have them keep longer, then get any great earthen pot, or barrel of three or four gallons (which is better) then wash your barrel with water and honey; and having put into it a quantity of earth and grasse roots, then put in your flies, and cover it, and they will live a quarter of a year; these in any stream and clear water, are a deadly bait for

*Roch* or *Dace*, or for a *Chub*, and your rule is, to Fish not lesse then a handful from the bottom.

I shall next tell you a winter bait for a *Roch*, a *Dace* or *Chub*, and it is choicely good. About *All-hollantide* (and so till Frost comes) when you see men ploughing up heath-ground, or sandy ground, or greenwards, then follow the plough, and you shall find a white worme as big as two Magots; and it hath a red head, (you may observe in what ground most are, for there the Crowes will be very watchfull, and follow the Plough very close) it is all soft, and full of whitish guts; a worme that is in *Norfolk*, and some other Countries called a *Grub*, and is bred of the spawne or eggs of a Beetle, which she leaves in holes that she digs in the ground under Cow or Horse-dung, and there rests all Winter, and in *March* or *April* comes to be first a red, and then a black Beetle: gather a thousand or two of these, and put them with a peck or two of their own earth into some tub or firkin, and cover and keep them so warme, that the frost or cold aire, or winds kill them not, and you may keep them all winter, and kill fish with them at any time: and if you put some of them into a little earth and honey a day before you use them, you will find them an excellent baite for *Bream* or *Carp*.

And after this manner you may also keep  
Gen-

Gentles all winter, which is a good baite then, and much the better for being lively and tough: or you may breed and keep Gentles thus: Take a piece of Beasts liver, and with a cross stick, hang it in some corner over a pot or barrel half full of dry clay, and as the Gentles grow big, they will fall into the barrel and scowre themselves, and be alwaies ready for use whensoever you incline to Fish; and these gentles may be thus made til after *Michaelmas*. But if you desire to keep Gentles to Fish with all the year, then get a dead Cat or a Kite and let it be fly-blown, and when the Gentles begin to be alive and to stir, then bury it and them in moist earth, but as free from frost as you can, and these you may dig up at any time when you intend to use them; these will last till *March*, and about that time turn to be flies.

But if you be nice to foul your Fingers, (which good Anglers seldom are) then take this Bait: Get a handful of well-made Mault, and put it into a dish of water, and then wash and rub it betwixt your hands till you make it clean, and as free from husks as you can; then put that water from it, and put a small quantitie of fresh water to it, and set it in something that is fit for that purpose over the Fire, where it is not to boil apace, but leasurely and very softly, untill it become somewhat soft, which you may trie by feeling it betwixt your Finger and

and Thumb, and when it is soft, then put your water from it, and then take a sharp Knife, and turning the sprout end of the corne upward, with the point of your Knife take the back part of the husk off from it, and yet leaving a kind of inward husk on the corn, or else it is marr'd, and then cut off that sprouted end, (I mean a little of it) that the white may appear, and so pull off the husk on the cloven side (as I directed you) and then cutting off a very little of the other end, that so your hook may enter, and if your hook be small and good, you will find this to be a very choice Bait either for Winter or Summer, you sometimes casting a little of it into the place where your fote swims.

And to take the *Roch* and *Dace*, a good Bait is <sup>at y</sup> the young brood of Wasps or Bees, if you dip <sup>at y</sup> their heads in bloud; especially good for <sup>at y</sup> *Bream*, if they be baked or hardned in their husks in an Oven, after the bread is taken out of it, or on a Fire-shovel; and so also is the thick bloud of *Sheep*, being half dried on a Trencher, that you may cut it into such pieces as may best fit the size of your hook, and a little salt keeps it from growing black, and makes it not the worse but better: This is taken to be a choice Bait if rightly ordered.

There be several Oiles of a strong smell that I have been told of, and to be excellent to tempt Fish to bite, of which I could say much,

but I remember I once carried a small Bottle from Sir *George Hastings* to Sir *Henry Wotton*, (they were both chymical men) as a great Present, it was sent, and receiv'd, and us'd with great confidence; and yet upon inquirie I found it did not answer the expectation of Sir *Henry*, which with the help of this and other circumstances, makes me have little belief in such things as many men talk of: not but that I think Fishes both smell and hear, (as I have exprest in my former discourse) but there is a mysterious Knack, which (though it be much easier than the Philosophers Stone, yet) is not attainable by common capacities, or else lies locked up in the brain or brest of some chymical man, that like the *Rosicrucians* will not yet reveal it. But I stepped by chance into this discourse of Oiles and Fishes smelling, and though there might be more said, both of it and of Baits for *Roach* and *Dace*, and other flote Fish, yet I will forbear it at this time, and tell you in the next place how you are to prepare your Tackling: concerning which I will for sport sake give you an old Rhime out of an old Fish-book, which will be a part of what you are to provide.

*My Rod and my Line, my Flote and my Lead,  
My Hook and my Plummert, my whetstone and knife,  
My Basket, my Baits both living and dead,*

*My*



*My Net and my Meat, for that is the chief:  
Then I must have Thred, and Hairs green and small,  
With mine Angling purse, and so you have all.*

But you must have all these Tackling, and twice so many more, with which if you mean to be a Fisher, you must store your self; and to that purpose I will go with you either to *Charles Brandons* (near to the Swan in *Golding-lane*;) or to *Mr. Fletchers* in the Court which did once belong to *Dr. Nowel* the Dean of *Pauls*; he that I told you was a good man and a good Fisher; it is hard by the West end of *St. Pauls Church*. But if you will buy choice hooks, I will one day walk with you to *Charles Kerbyes* in *Harp-alley* in *Shooc-lane*, who is the most exact and best hook-maker the Nation affords. They be all three honest men, and will fit an Angler with what Tackling he wants.

*I have heard, that the tackling hath been prized at fifty pounds in the Inventorie of an Angler.*

*Venat.* Then, good Master, let it be at *Charles Brandons*, for he is nearest to my dwelling, and I pray let's meet there the ninth of *May* next about two of the clock, and I'll want nothing that a Fisher should be furnished with.

*Pisc.* Well, and I'll not fail you God willing, at the time and place appointed.

*Venat.* I thank you, good Master, and I will not fail you: and, good Master, tell me what



Baits more you remember, for it will not now be long ere we shall be at *Tottenbam high-Crosse*, and when we come thither I will make you some requital of your pains, by repeating as choice a copie of Verses, as any we have heard since we met together; and that is a proud word, for we have heard very good ones.

*Pisc.* Well, Scholer, and I shall be right glad to hear them; and I will tell you whatsoever comes in my mind, that I think may be worth your hearing. You may make another choice Bait thus, Take a handful or two of the best and biggest *Wheat* you can get, boil it in a little milk, (like as *Frumity* is boiled) boil it so till it be soft, and then frie it very leasurely with Honie and a little beaten *Saffron* dissolved in milk, and you will find this a choice Bait, and good I think for any Fish, especially for *Roch*, *Dace*, *Chub* or *Greyling*: I know not but that it may be as good for a *River-carp*, and especially if the ground be a little baited with it.

26. You are also to know, that there be divers kinds of *Cadis*, or *Cafe-worms*, that are to be found in this Nation in severall distinct Counties, and in severall little Brooks that relate to bigger Rivers, as namely, one *Cadis* called a *Piper*, whose husk or case is a piece of reed about an inch long or longer, and as big about as the compass of a twopence; these worms being kept three or four days in a woollen bag with sand

land at the bottom of it, and the bag wet once a day, will in three or four days turn to be yellow, and these be a choice bait for the *Chub* or *Chavender*, or indeed for any great Fish, for it is a large bait.

There is also a lesser *Cadis-worm*, called a *Cock-spur*, being in fashion like the spur of a Cock, sharp at one end, and the case or house in which this dwells is made of small husks and gravel, and slime, most curiously made of these, even so as to be wondered at, but not to be made by man no more then a *King-fishers* nest can, which is made of little fishes bones, and have such a Geometricall inter-weaving and connexion, as the like is not to be done by the art of man: This kind of *Cadis* is a choice bait for any *flote-Fish*, it is much less then the *Piper-Cadis*, and to be so ordered, and these may be so preserved ten, fifteen, or twenty days, or it may be longer.

There is also another *Cadis* called by some a *Straw-worm*, and by some a *Russe-coat*, whose house or case is made of little pieces of bents, and rushes, and straws, and water-weeds, and I know not what, which are so knit together with condensed slime, that they stick about her husk or case, not unlike the bristles of a *Hedg-hog*; these three *Cadis* are commonly taken in the beginning of Summer, and are good indeed to take any kind of fish with flote or otherwise. I

might tell you of many more, which as these do early, so those have their time of turning to be flies later in Summer ; but I might lose my self, and tire you by such a discourse, I shall therefore but remember you, that to know these, and their severall kinds, and to what flies every particular *Cadis* turnes, and then how to use them first as they be *Cadis*, and then as they be *flies* is an art, and an art that every one that professes to be an *Angler* has not leisure to search after, and if he had, is not capable of learning.

Ile tell you Scholer, severall Countries have severall kinds of *Cadisses*, that indeed differ as much as dogs do : That is to say, as much as a very *Cur* and a *Greyhound* do. These be usually bred in the very little rills or ditches that run into bigger rivers, and I think a more proper bait for those very Rivers, then any other. I know not how or of what this *Cadis* receives life, or what coloured flye it turnes to ; but doubtlesse, they are the death of many *Trouts*, and this is one killing way.

Take one (or more if need be) of these large yellow *Cadis*, pull off his head, and with it pull out his black gut, put the body (as little bruised as is possible) on a very little hook, armed on with a Red haire (which will shew like the *Cadis-head*) and a very little thin lead, so put upon the shank of the hook that it may sink presently ; throw this bait thus ordered (which will  
look

look very yellow) into a hole where a Trout is, and he will presently venture his life for it, 'tis not to be doubted if you be not espied; and that the bait first touch the water before the line, and this will do best in the stillest water.

Next let me tell you, I have been much pleased to walk quietly by a Brook with a little stick in my hand, with which I might easily take these, and consider the curiosity of their composition; and if you shall ever like to do so, then note, that your stick must be cleft, or have a nick at one end of it, by which means you may with ease take many of them in that nick out of the water, before you have any occasions to use them. These, my honest Scholer, are some observations told to you as they now come suddenly into my memory, of which you may make some use: but for the practical part, it is that that makes an Angler: it is diligence, and observation, and practice, and an ambition to be the best in the Art that must do it. I will tell you Scholer, I once heard one say, *I envy not him that eats better meat than I do, nor him that is richer, or that wears better cloathes than I do. I envy no body but him, and him onely that catches more fish than I do.* And such a man is like to prove an Angler, and this noble emulation I wish to you and all young Anglers.

## CHAP. XVIII.

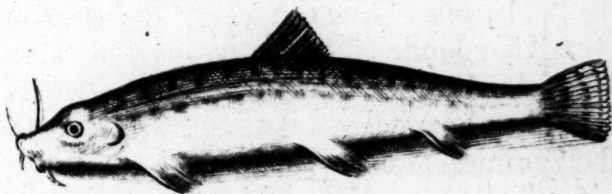
*Of the Minnow or Penk, of the Loach, and  
of the Bull-head, or Millers-thumb.*

*Pisc.* **T**Here be also three or four other little fish that I had almost forgot, that are all without scales, and may for excellency of meat be compared to any fish of greatest value, and largest size. They be usually full of eggs or spawn all the moneths of Summer; for they breed often, as 'tis observed *mice* and many of the smaller four-footed Creatures of the earth do; and as those, so these come quickly to their full growth and perfection. And it is needfull that they breed both often and numerously, for they be (besides other accidents of ruine) both a prey, and baites for other fish. And first, I shall tell you of the *Minnow* or *Penk*.

The *Minnow* hath, when he is in perfect season, and not sick (which is onely presently after spawning) a kind of dapled or waved colour, like to a *Panther*, on his sides, inclining to a greenish and skie-color, his belly being milk-white, and his back almost black or blackish. He is a sharp biter at a small worm, and in hot weather makes excellent sport for young Anglers, or boyes, or women that love that Recreation,

creation, and in the spring they make of them excellent *Minnow-Tansies*; for being washed well in salt, and their heads and tails cut off, and their guts taken out, they prove excellent for that use, being fryed with yolks of eggs, the flowers of *Cowslips*, and of *Primroses*, and a little *Tansie*.

The Loach is, as I told you, a most dainty fish, he breeds and feeds in little and clear swift brooks or rills; and lives there upon the gravel, and in the sharpest streams: He growes not to be above a finger-long, and no thicker then is futable to that length. This *Loach*,



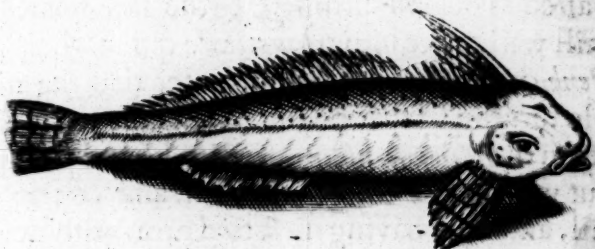
is of the shape of the Eele: he has a beard or wattels like a *Barbel*. He has two fins at his sides, four at his belly and one at his tail; he is dapled with many black or brown spots, his mouth is Barbel-like under his nose. This Fish is usually full of eggs or spawn, and is by Ges-



ner and other learned Physitians commended for great nourishment, and to be very grateful both to the palate and stomach of sick persons, and is to be fished for with a very small worm at the bottom, for he very seldom or never rises above the Gravel, on which I told you he usually gets his living.

The *Millers-thumb* or *Bull-head* is a Fish of no pleasing shape. He is by *Gesner* compared to the *Sea-toad-fish*, for his similitude and shape. It has a head big and flat, much greater than suitable to his Bodie; a mouth very wide and usually gaping. He is without teeth, but his lips are very rough, much like to a File. He hath two Fins near to his gills, which be roundish or crested, two Fins also under the Bellie, two on the Back, one below the Vent, and the Fin of his tail is round. Nature hath painted the Bodie of this Fish with *whitish, blackish, brownish* spots. They be usually full of egges or spawne all the Summer, (I mean the Females) and those eggs swell their Vents almost into the form of a dug. They begin to spawne about *April*, and (as I told you) spawn several moneths in the Summer; and in the Winter the Minnow, and Loach and Bul-head dwell in the mud as the Eele doth, or we know not where; no more than we know where the Cuckoe and Swallow, and other Summer-birds (which first appear to us in *April*) spend their cold winter melancholy moneths. This *Bulhead* does





does usually dwell and hide himself in holes or amongst stones in clear water ; and in very hot daies will lie a very long time and very still, and sun himself, and will be easie to be seen upon any flat stone, or on any gravel, at which time he will suffer an Angler to put a hook baited with a small worm very near unto his very mouth, and he never refuses to bite, nor indeed to be caught with the worst of Anglers. *Matthiolus* commends him much more for his taste and nourishment, than for his shape or beautie.

There is also a little Fish called a *Sticklebag* ; a Fish without scales, but hath his body fenc'd with severall prickles. I know not where he dwels in winter, nor what he is good for in Summer, but only to make sport for boyes and women-Anglers, and to feed other Fish that be Fish of prey, as Trouts in particular, who will bite

## The Complete Angler.

Site at him as at a Penk, and better, if your hook be rightly baited with him, for he may be so baited as his tail turning like the sail of a wind-mill will make him turne more quick then any *Penk* or *Minnow* can. For note, that the nimble turning of that or the *Minnow* is the perfection of *Minnow-fishing*. To which end, if you put your hook into his mouth, and out at his tail, and then having first tied him with white thred a little above his tail, and placed him after such a manner on your hook as he is like to turn, then sow up his mouth to your line, and he is like to turn quick, and tempt any *Trout*: but if he do not turn quick, then turn his tail a little more or lesse towards the inner part, or towards the side of the hook, or put the *Minnow* or *Sticklebag* a little more crooked or more straite on your hook, untill it will turne both true and fast; and then doubt not but to tempt any great *Trout* that lies in a swift stream. And the *Loach* that I told you of will do the like; no baite is more tempting, provided the *Loach* be not too big.

And now *Scholer*, with the help of this fine morning, and your patient attention, I have said all that my present memory will afford me concerning most of the severall Fish that are usually fished for in fresh waters.

*Venat*. But Master, you have by your former civility made me hope that you will make good your promise, and say something of the  
several

several Rivers that be of most note in this Nation ; and also of *Fish-ponds*, and the ordering of them ; and do it I pray good Master, for I love any Discourse of Rivers, and Fish and fishing, the time spent in such discourse passes away very pleasantly.

## CHAP. XIX.

*Of several Rivers, and some observations of fish.*

*Pisc.* **W**ELL Scholer, since the wayes and weather do both favor us, and that we yet see not *Tottenham Croß*, you shall see my willingnesse to satisfie your desire. And first, for the Rivers of this Nation, there be (as you may note out of Doctor *Heylins* Geography and others) in number 325. but those of chiefest note he reckons and describes as followeth.

The chief is *Tham̄sis*, compounded of two Rivers, *Thāme* and *Isis* ; whereof the former rising somewhat beyond *Thame* in *Buckinghamshire*, and the latter in *Cyrensester* in *Glocestershire* meet together about *Dorcester* in *Oxfordshire*, the issue of which happy conjunction is the *Tham̄sis* or *Thames*. Hence it flyeth betwixt

twixt *Berks*, *Buckinghamshire*, *Middlesex*, *Surry*, *Kent* and *Essex*, and so weddeth himself to the *Kentish Medway* in the very jawes of the Ocean; this glorious River feeleth the violence and benefit of the Sea more then any River in *Europe*, ebbing and flowing twice a day, more then sixtie miles; about whose banks are so many fair Townes and Princely Palaces that a *Germane Poet* thus truly spake:

*Tot Campos, &c.*

*We saw so many Woods, and Princely bowers,  
Sweet Fields, brave Palaces, and stately Towers,  
So many Gardens drest with curious care,  
That Thames with royal Tiber may compare.*

2. The second River of note, is *Sabrina* or *Severn*: it hath its beginning in *Plinlimmon Hill* in *Montgomery-shire*, end his and seven miles from *Bristol*, washing in the mean space the walls of *Shrewsbury*, *Worcester* and *Glocester*, and divers other places and palaces of note.

3. *Trent* so called for thirty kind of Fishes that are found in it, or that it receiveth thirty lesser Rivers, who having his fountaine in *Staffordshire*, and gliding through the Countries of *Nottingham*, *Lincoln*, *Leicester* and *York*, augmenteth the turbulent current of *Humber*, the most violent stream of all the Isle. This *Humber* is  
not

Not, to say truth, a distinct River, having a spring head of his own, but rather the mouth or *Estuorium* of divers Rivers here confluent and meeting together; namely, your *Dorwent*, and especially of *Ouse* and *Trent*; and (as the *Danow*, having received into its channel, the River *Dravus*, *Savus*, *Tibisnas*, and divers others) changeth his name into this of *Humberabus*, as the old Geographers call it.

4. *Medway*, a Kentish River, famous for harbouring the royal Navy.

5. *Tweed*, on north east bound of *England*, on whole northerne banks is seated the strong and impregnable Town of *Barmick*.

6. *Tine*, famous for *Newcastle* and her inexhaustible coal-pits. These and the rest of principal note are thus comprehended in one of Mr. *Draytons* Sonnets.

*The floods queen Thames for ships and swans is  
And stately Severn for her shore is prais'd, (crown'd  
The Christall Trent for fords and fish renown'd,  
And Avons fame to Albions cliffs is rais'd,  
Carlegion Chester vants her holy Dee,  
York many wonders of her Ouse can tell,  
The Peke her Dove, whose banks so fertil-be,  
And Kent will say her Medway doth excell.  
Cotswoll commends her Isis to the Tame,  
Our Northern borders boast of Tweeds fair Flood,  
Our western parts extoll their Willies fame,  
And the old Lea brags of the Danish blond.*

These

These observations are out of learned Doctor *Heylin*, and my old deceased friend *Michael Drayton*; and because you say, you love such discourses as these of *fish* and *fishing*, I love you the better, and love the more to impart them to you; neverthelesse, *Scholer*, if I should begin but to name the severall sorts of strange Fish that are usually taken in many of these rivers that run into the Sea, I might beget wonder in you, or unbelief, or both; and yet I will venture to tell you a reall truth concerning one lately dissected by Doctor *Wharton*, a man of great learning and experience, and of equall freedom to communicate it, one that loves me and my Art, one to whom I have been beholding for many of the choicest observations that I have imparted to you. This good man, that dares do any thing rather then tell an untruth, did (I say) tell me he lately dissected one, and he thus described it to me.

*He was almost a yard broad, and twice that length; his mouth wide enough to receive or take into it the head of a man, his stomach seven or eight inches broad: he is of a slow motion, and usually lyes or lurks close in the mud, and has a moveable string on his head about a span, or near unto a quarter of a yard long, by the moving of which (which is his natural Bait) when he lyes close and unseen in the mud, he draws other smaller fish close to him,*  
and



and then sucks them into his mouth and devours them.

And, Scholer, do not wonder at this, for besides the credit of the Relator, you are to note, many of these, and Fishes which are of the like and more unusual shapes, are very often taken on the mouths of our Sea-rivers, and on the Sea-shore ; and this will be no wonder to any that have travelled *Egypt*, where 'tis known the famous River *Nilus* does not onely breed Fishes that yet want names, but the over-flowing of that River by the help of the Suns heat on that fat slime which that River leaves on the Banks, (when it falls back into its natural channel) strange Beasts are also bred, that no man can give a name to, as *Grotius* (in his *Sopham*) and others have observed.

But whither am I straid in this discourse ? I will end it by telling you, that at the mouth of some of these Rivers of ours, Herrings are so plentiful, as namely near to *Yarmouth* in *Norfolk*, and in the west Countrie, Pilchers so very plentiful, as you will wonder to read what our learned *Cambden* relates of them in his *Britannia*, p. 178, 186.

Well, Scholer, I will stop here, and tell you what by reading and conference I have observed concerning Fish-ponds.

## C H A P. XX.

*Of Fish-ponds, and how to order them.*

**D**Octor *Lebault* the learned French man, in his large discourse of *Mason Rustique*, gives this direction for making of *Fish-ponds*, I shall refer you to him to read it at large, but I think I shall contract it, and yet make it as useful.

He adviseth, that when you have dreined the ground, and made the earth firme where the head of the Pond must be, that you must then in that place drive in two or three rows of Oak or Elme Piles, which should be scorcht in the Fire, or half burnt before they be driven into the earth, (for being thus used preserves them much longer from rotting) and having done so, lay fagots or Bavins of smaller wood betwixt them, and then earth betwixt and above them, and then having first very well rammed them and the earth, another pile used in like manner as the first were: and note that the second pile is to be of or about the height that you intend to make your Sluce or floud-gate, or the vent that you intend shall convey the overflowings of your Pond in any floud that shall endanger the breaking of the Pond dam.

Then he adviseth that you plant Willows or  
Owlers

Owlers about it, or cast in Bavins in some places not far from the side, and in the most sandy places for Fish both to spawn upon, and to defend them and the young Frie from the many Fish, and also from Vermin that lie at watch to destroy them, especially the spawn of the *Carp* and *Tench*.

He and *Dubravins* and all others advise, that you make choite of such a place for your Pond, that it may be refresht with a little rill, or with rain water running or falling into it ; by which Fish are more inclined both to breed, and are also refresht and fed the better, and do prove to be of a much sweeter and more pleasant taste.

To which end it is observed, that such Pools as be large and have most gravel, and shallows where *fish* may sport themselves, do afford Fish of the purest taste. And note, that in all Pools it is best for Fish to have some retiring place, as namely hollow banks, or shelves, or roots of trees to keep them from danger ; and when they think fit from the extreme heat of Summer, as also from the extremity of cold in Winter. And note, that if many trees be growing about your Pond, the leaves thereof falling into the water, makes it nautious to the Fish, and the Fish to be so to the eater of it.

'Tis noted that the *Tench* and *Eele* love mud, and the *Carp* loves gravelly ground, and in the hot moneths to feed on grasse : You are to

cleanse your Pond if you intend either profit or pleasure, once every three or four Years, (especially some Ponds) and then let them lie dry six or twelve moneths, both to kill the water-weeds, as *Water-lillies*, *Candocks*, *Reate* and *Bull-rushes* that breed there; and also that as these die for want of water, so grasse may grow on the Ponds bottom, which *Carps* will eat greedily in all the hot moneths. The letting your Pond drie and sowing Oats in the bottom is also good, for the Fish feed the faster: and being sometime let drie you may observe what kind of Fish either increases or thrives best in that water; for they differ much both in their breeding and feeding.

*Lebault* also advises, that if your Ponds be not very large and roomy, that you often feed your Fish by throwing into them chippings of Bread, Curds, Grains, or the entrails of Chickens, or any fowle or beast that you kill to feed your selves; for these afford Fish a great relief. He saies that Frogs and Ducks do much harm, and devour both the Spawne and the young Frie of all Fish, especially of the *Carp*. And I have, besides experience, many testimonies of it. But *Lebault* allows Water-frogs to be good meat, especially in some Moneths, if they be fat: But you are to note, that he is a *French-man*, and we *English* will hardly believe him, though we know frogs are usually eaten  
in

in his Country : however he advifes to destroy them and King-fishers out of your Ponds ; and he advifes, not to suffer much shooting at wild fowle, for that (he saies) affrightens, and harms, and destroyes the Fish.

Note, that Carps and Tench thrive and breed best when no other Fish is put with them into the same Pond ; for all other Fish devour their spawn, or at least the greatest part of it. And note, that clods of grasse throwne into any Pond feed any Carps in Summer ; and that garden earth and parsley thrown into a Pond, recovers and refreshes the sick fish. And note, that when you store your pond, you are to put into it two or three Melters for one Spawner, if you put them into a breeding Pond : but if into a nurse-pond, or feeding pond, in which they will not breed, then no care is to be taken, whether there be most Male or Female Carps.

It is observed, that the best ponds to breed Carps are those that be stonie or sandy, and are warm, and free from wind, and that are not deep, but have willow-trees and grasse on their sides, over which the water does sometimes flow : and note, that Carps do more usually breed in marle pits, or pits that have cleane clay bottoms, or in new ponds, or ponds that lie dry a winter season, then in old Ponds, that be full of mud and weeds.

Well Scholer, I have told you the substance of

all that either *observation*, or *discourse*, or a diligent *Survey* of *Dubravins* and *Lebault* hath told me. Not that they in **their** long discourses have not said more, but the most of the rest are so common observations, as if a man should tell a good Arithmetitian, that twice two is four. I will therefore end this discourse, and we will here sit down and rest us.

---

## C H A P. XXI.

*Directions for making of a Line, and for the  
coulouring of both Rod and Line.*

*Pisc.*

**W**

E L L, Scholer, I have held you too long about these *ca-dis*, and smaller *fish*, and *ri-vers*, and *Fish-ponds*, and my spirits are almost spent, and so I doubt is your patience; but being we are now almost at *Tottenham*, where I first met you, and where we are to part, I will lose no time, but give you a little direction how to make and order your Lines, and to colour the hair of which you make your lines, for that is very needfull to be known of an Angler; and also how to paint your rod; especially your top, for a right grown top is a choice Commodity, and should be preserved from the water soaking into it, which makes it  
in



in wet weather to be heavy, and fish ill favourably, and not true, and also it rots quickly for want of painting: and I think a good top is worth preserving, or I had not taken care to keep a top above twenty years.

But first for your line.

First note, That you are to take care, that your haire be round, and free from galls or scabs, or frets, for a well-chosen, even, clear, round hair, of a kind of glasse-colour, will prove as strong as three uneven scabby hairs, that are ill chosen, and full of galls or unevenness. You shall seldom find a black hair but it is round, but many white are flat and uneven; therefore if you get a lock of right, round, clear, glass colour hair make much of it.

And for making your *Line*, observe this rule, First, let your hair be clean washt ere you go about to twist it: and then chuse not only the clearest hair for it, but hairs that be of an equall bignesse, for such do usually stretch all together, and not break singly one by one, but all together.

When you have twisted your links lay them in water for a quarter of an hour, at least, and then twist them over again before you tie them into a *Line*; for those that do not so shall usually find their *Lines* to have a hair or two shrink, and be shorter then the rest at the first fishing with it, which is so much of the strength

of the Line lost for want of first watering it, and then re-twisting it; and this is most visible in a seven-hair line, one which hath alwayes a black hayre in the middle.

And for dying of your hairs do it thus :

Take a pint of strong Ale, halfe a pound of foot, and a little quantity of the juice of *Walnut-tree* leaves, and an equal quantity of Allome, put these together into a pot, or pan, or pipkin, and boile them half an hour, and having so done let it cool, and being cold, put your hair into it, and there let it lie; it will turn your hair to be a kind of water or glass colour, or greenish, and the longer you let it lye, the deeper coloured it will be; you might be taught to make mank other colors, but it is to little purpose; for doubtlesse the water or glass-coloured haire is the most choice and most useful for an *Angler*; but let it not be too green.

But if you desire to colour haire greener, then do it thus : Take a quart of small Ale, halfe a pound of Allome, then put these into a pan or pipkin, and your haire into it with them, then put it upon a fire and let it boil softly for half an hour, and then take out your haire, and let it dry, and having so done, then take a pottle of water, and put into it two handfull of *Mary-golds*, and cover it with a tile, (or what you think fit,) and set it againe on the Fire, where it is to boile softly for half an hour, about which  
time

time the scum will turn yellow, then put into it half a pound of Coperas beaten small, and with it the hair that you intend to colour, then let the hair be boiled softly till half the liquor be wasted, and then let it cool three or four hours with your hair in it: and you are to observe, that the more Copperas you put into it, the greener it will be, but doubtlesse the pale green is best: But if you desire yellow hair, (which is onely good when the weeds rot) then put in the more *Mary-golds*, and abate most of the Copperas, or leave it out, and take a little Verdigreece instead of it.

This for colouring your hair. And as for painting your Rod, which must be in Oil, you must first make a size with glue and water, boiled together, untill the glue be dissolved, and the size of a Lie-colour; then strike your size upon the wood with a Bristle, or a Brush or Pensil, whilst it is hot: that being quite dry, take white Lead, and a little red Lead, and a little cole-black, so much as all together will make an ash-colour; grind these all together with Linseed oile, let it be thick, and lay it thin upon the wood with a Brush or Pensil, this do for the ground of any colour to lie upon wood.

*For a Green.*

Take Pink and Verdigreece, and grind them together in Linseed-oile, as thick as you can

R 4.

well

well grind it, then lay it smoothly on with your Brush, and drive it thin, once doing for the most part will serve, if you lay it well, and be sure your first colour be thoroughly dry before you lay on a second.

Well, Scholer, you now see *Tottenham*, and I am weary, and therefore glad that we are so near it: and if I were to walk many more daies with you, I could still be telling you more and more of the mysterious Art of Angling: But I will hope for another opportunitie, and then I will acquaint you with many more, both necessary and true observations concerning fish and fishing: but now no more, let's turn into yonder *Arbour*, for it is a clean and cool place.

*Venat.* 'Tis a fair motion, and I will requite a part of your courtesies with a bottle of *Sack*, *Milk*, *Oranges* and *Sugar*, which all put together, make a drink like *Nectar*, indeed too good for any body but us *Anglers*: and so *Master*, here is a full glasse to you of that liquor, and when you have pledged me, I will repeat the Verses which I promised you; it is a Copy printed amongst Sir *Henry Wottons* Verses, and doubtlesse made either by him, or by a lover of Angling: Come *Master*, now drink a glasse to me, and then I will pledge you, and fall to my repetition; it is a description of such *Country-Recreations* as I have enjoyed since I had the happiness to fall into your companie.

*Quivering fears, heart-tearing cares,  
Anxious sighs, untimely tears,  
Flye, flye to Courts,  
Flye to fond worldlings sports,  
Where strain'd Sardonick smiles are glosing still,  
And grief is forc'd to laugh against her will.  
Where mirth's but mummery,  
And sorrows onely real be.*

*Flye from our Countrey-pastimes, flye,  
Sad troops of humane misery,  
Come serene looks,  
Clear as the christal Brooks,  
Or the pure azur'd heaven that smiles to see  
The rich attendance on our poverty ;  
Peace and a secure mind,  
Which all men seek, we onely find.*

*Abused Mortals, did you know  
Where joy, hearts-eale and comforts grow,  
You'd scorne proud Towers,  
And seek them in these Bowers, (shake,  
Where winds sometimes our woods perhaps may  
But blustering care could never tempest make,  
Nor murmurs ere come nigh us,  
Saving of fountains that glide by us.*

*Here's no fantastick Mask nor Dance,  
But of our Kids that frisk and prance ;*

Not warrs are seen,  
 Unlesse upon the green  
 Two harmlesse Lambs are butting one the other,  
 Which done, both bleating, run each to his mother.  
 And wounds are never found,  
 Save what the plough-share gives the ground.

Here are no entrapping baits  
 To hasten too too hasty fates,  
 Unlesse it be  
 The fond credulity  
 Of silly fish, which (worldling-like) still look  
 Upon the bait, but never on the hook:  
 Nor envy, 'nlesse among  
 The birds for price of their sweet song.

Go, let the diving Negro seek  
 For gems hid in some forlorne creek:  
 We all pearls scorne,  
 Save what the dewy morne  
 Congeals upon each little spire of grasse,  
 Which carelesse shepherds beat down as they passe:  
 And gold ne're here appears,  
 Save what the yellow Ceres bears.

Blest silent groves, oh may you be  
 For ever mirths best nursery:  
 May pure contents  
 For ever pitch their tents

Upon

(mountains,

*Upon these downs, these meads, these rocks, these  
And Peace still slumber by these purling fountains :*

*Which we may every year*

*Meet when we come a fishing here.*

*Pisc.* Trust me (Scholer) I thank you heartily for these Verses, they be choicely good, and doubtless made by a lover of Angling: Come, now, drink a gla's to me, and I will requite you with a very good Copie of Verses: it is a Farewell to the vanities of the World, and some say written by Sir *Harry Wotton*, who I told you was an excellent Angler. But let them be writ by whom they will, he that writ them had a brave soul, and must needs be possesst with happy thoughts at the time of their composition:

*Farewell ye gilded follies, pleasing troubles ;*

*Farewell ye honour'd drags, ye glorious bubbles :*

*Fame's but a hollow eccho, Gold pure clay ;*

*Honour the darling but of one short day.*

*Beauty (th' eyes idol) but a damask'd skin ;*

*State but a golden prison, to live in,*

*And torture free-born minds : imbroydred Trains*

*Meerly but pageants for proud swelling veins :*

*And Blood ally'd : o Greatnesse is alone*

*Inherited, not purchas'd, nor our own. (Birth*

*Fame, Honour, Beauty, State, Train, Blood and*

*Are but the fading Blossoms of the earth.*



*I would be great, but that the Sun doth still  
 Levell his rayes against the rising hill :  
 I would be high, but see the proudest Oak  
 Most subject to the rending Thunder-stroak :  
 I would be rich, but see men (too unkind)  
 Dig in the bowels of the richest mind :  
 I would be wise, but that I often see  
 The Fox suspected, whilest the Ass goes free :  
 I would be fair, but see the fair and proud  
 (Like the bright Sun) oft setting in a cloud.  
 I would be poor, but know the humble grasse  
 Still trampled on by each unworthy Ass :  
 Rich, hated : wise suspected : scorn'd if poor :  
 Great, feard : fair, tempted : high still envy'd more :  
 I have wish'd all ; but now I wish for neither ;  
 Great, high, rich, wise, nor fair ; poor Ile be ra-  
 (ther.*

*Would the world now adopt me for her heir,  
 Would Beauties Queen entitle me the Fair,  
 Fame speak me Fortunes Minion : could I vie  
 Angels with India, with a speaking eye  
 Command bare heads, bow'd knees, strike Justice dumb  
 As well as blind and lame, or give a tongue  
 To stones by Epitaphs : be call'd great Master  
 In the loose Rhimes of every Poetaster :  
 Could I be more then any man that lives,  
 Great, fair, rich, wise in all Superlatives :  
 Yet I more freely would these gifts resign,  
 Then ever Fortune would have made them mine ,*

*And hold one minute of this holy leasure.  
Beyond the riches of this empty pleasure.*

*Welcome pure thoughts, welcome ye silent Groves,  
These guests, these courts my soul most dearly loves :  
Now the wing'd people of the skie shall sing  
My cheerfull Anthems to the gladſom Spring :  
A Pray'r-Book now ſhall be my looking-glaſſe,  
In which I will adore ſweet Vertue's face.  
Here dwell no hateful looks, no Palace cares,  
No broken Vows dwell here, nor pale-fac'd Fears :  
Then here I'll ſit and ſigh my hot loves folly,  
And learn t' affect an holy melancholy,  
And if Contentment be a ſtranger then,  
I'll ne'r look for it, but in heaven agen.*

*V. nat.* Well Maſter, theſe Verſes be worthy to keep a room in every mans memory. I thank you for them ; and I thank you for your many inſtructions, which (God willing) I will not forget : and as St. *Auſtin* in his *Confessions* (*book 4. chap. 3.*) commemorates the kindneſs of his friend *Verecundus*, for lending him and his companion a *Country-houſe*, becauſe there they reſted themſelves from the troubles of the world; ſo I having had the like advantage, both by your converſation, and the Art you have taught me, ought ever to do the like : for indeed your company and diſcourſe have beene ſo uſeful and pleaſant, that I may truly ſay I  
*have*

*have only lived since I enjoyed them, and turned Angler and not before. Neverthelesse, here I must part with you, here in this now sad place where I was so happy as First to meet you : But I shall long for the ninth of May, for then I hope again to enjoy your beloved companie at the appointed time and place. And now I wish for some somniferous potion, that might force me to sleep away the intermitted time, which will passe away with me as tediously, as it does with men in sorrow ; neverthelesse I will make it as short as I can by my hopes and wishes. And my good Master, I will not forget the doctrine which you told me Socrates taught his scholers, That they should not think to be honoured so much for being Philosophers, as to honour Philosophie by their vertuous lives. You advised me to the like concerning Angling, and I will endeavour to do so, and to live like those many worthy men of which you made mention in the former part of your discourse. This is my firme resolution, and as a pious man advised his friend, That to beget Mortification he should frequent Churches, and view Monuments, and Charnel-houses, and then and there consider, how many dead bones time had piled up at the gates of death. So when I would beget content, and increase confidence in the Power, and wisdom, and Providence of Almighty God, I will walk the Meadomes by some gliding stream, and there contemplate the Lillies that*

that take no care, and those very many various little living *creatures* that are not only created, but fed (man knowes not how) by the goodnesse of the God of *Nature*. This is my purpose, and so, *Let every thing that hath breath praise the Lord*. And let the blessing of *St. Peters* Master be with mine.

*Pisc.* And upon all that are lovers of *Vertue*, and all that love to be quiet, and go a *fishing*.

*Study to be quiet, 1 Thes. 4. 11.*

---

---



The Laws of Angling



A SHORT  
DISCOURSE  
By way of  
POSTSCRIPT,  
Touching the  
LAWES  
OF  
ANGLING.

My good Friend,



I cannot but tender my particular thanks to you, for that you have been pleased by three Editions of your Complete Angler, freely to dispence your dear-bought Experiences to all the lovers of that Art; and have thereby so excellently vindicated the Legality thereof, as to Divine approbation, that

## The Lawes of Angling.

that if I should go about to say more in that behalf, it indeed were to light a Candle to the Sun: But since all pleasures (though never so innocent in themselves) lose that stamp, when they are either pursued with inordinate affections, or to the prejudice of another; therefore as to the former, every man ought to endeavour, through a serious consideration of the vanity of worldly contentments, to moderate his affections thereunto, whereby they may be made of excellent use, as some poysons allayed are in Physick: And as to the later, we are to have recourse to the known Lawes, ignorance whereof excuseth no man, and by their directions to square our actions, that we hurt no man, but keep close to that golden Rule, To do to all men, as we would our selves be done unto.

Now concerning the Art of Angling, we may conclude, Sir, that as you have proved it to be of great Antiquity, so I find it favoured by the Lawes of this Kingdom; for where provision is made by our Statutes primo Elizab. cap. 17. against taking Fish by Nets that be not of such and such a size there set down, yet those Law-makers had so much respect to Anglers, as to except them, and leave them a liberty to catch as big as they could, and as little as they would catch. And yet though this Apostolical Recreation be simply in it self lawful, yet no man can go upon another mans ground to fish, without  
his



## The Lawes of Angling.

his license, but that he is a Trespasser; but if a man have license to enter into a Close or Ground for such a space of time, there, though he practise Angling all that time, he is not a Trespasser, because his fishing is no abuse of his license: but this is to be understood of Running Streams, and not of Ponds or standing Pools; for in case of a Pond or standing Pool, the Owner thereof hath a property in the fish, and they are so far said to be his, that he may have Trespass for the fish against any one that shall take them without his license, though it be upon a Common, or adjoining to the Kings Highway, or adjoining to another mans ground, who gives license: But in case of a River, where one or more have libera piscaria, only, it is otherwise, for there the fishes are said to be *feræ naturæ*, and the taking of them with an Angle is not Trespass, for that no man is said to have a property in them till he have caught them, and then it is a trespass for any to take them from him: But this is not to be understood of fishes confined to a mans own ground by grates or otherwise, so that they cannot passe away, but may be taken out or put in at pleasure, for in that case the party hath a property in them, as in the case of a standing Pool.

But where any one hath *seperalis piscaria*, as in Child and Greenhills Case in Trin. 15. Car. 1. in the Kings

Trin. 15. Car. 1.

## The Lawes of Angling.

Bench, there it seemeth that the fish may be said to be his, because no man else may take them whilest they are within his severall fishing; therefore what is meant by a severall fishing is necessary to be considered: and though the difference betwixen a free fishing and a severall fishing be often treated of in the ancient books of the Law, and some Opinions will have the difference to be great, and others small or nothing at all; yet the certainest definition of a severall fishing is, where one hath the Royalty, and ow-  
eth the ground on each side of the water: which

Mich. 17.E.4.6.

&

Pasc. 18.E.4.4.

agreeth with Sir William Calthrops Case, where an Action was brought by him against another for fishing in his severall fishing, &c. to which the Defendant pleaded, That the place where in the Trespasse was supposed to be done, contained ten Perches of Land in length, and twenty Perches in breadth, which was his own freehold at the time when the Trespasse was supposed to be done, and that he fished there as was lawfull for him to do: and this was adjudged a good Plea by the whole Court, and upon argument in that very Case it was agreed, That no man could have a severall fishing but in his own soyl, and that free fishing may be in the soyl of another man, which was all agreed unto by Littleton our famous English Lawyer. So that from all this may be drawn this short conclusion,

## The Lawes of Angling.

clusion, That if the Angler take care that he offend not with his feet, there is no great danger of his hands.

But there are some covetous rigid persons, whose souls hold no sympathy with those of the innocent Anglers, having either got to be Lords of Royalties, or owners of Lands adjoining to Rivers, do, by some apted clownish nature and education for the purpose, insult and domineer over the innocent Angler, beating him, breaking his Rod, or at least taking it from him, and sometimes imprisoning his person, as if he were a Felon: Whereas a true-bred Gentleman scorns those Spider-like attempts, and will rather refresh a civil stranger at his Table, than warn him from coming on his ground upon so innocent an occasion. It would therefore be considered how far such furious drivers are warranted by the Law, and what the Angler may (in case of such violence) do in defence of himself: If I come upon another mans ground without his license, or the license of the Law, I am a Trespasser, for which the owner may have an Action of Trespasse against me, and if I continue there after warning to depart by the owner, or his servant thereunto authorized, the owner or his servant by his command, may put me off by force, but not beat me, but in case of resistance by me, for then I (by resisting) make the assault; but if he beat me, I not resisting, it is that

S 3

case

## The Lawes of Angling.

case he makes the assault, and I may beat him in defence of my self, and to free my self from his violence : and in case I shall leave my Rod behind in his ground, he may take it damage feasant, but he can neither take it from my person by force, nor break it, but he is a Trespasser to me : Which seems clear by the case of

Mich. 7. Car. 1.

Reynell and Champernoon, where Reynell brought an Action of Trespasse against Champernoon for taking and cutting his Nets, the Defendant justified for that he was seised in fee of a several fishing, and that the Plaintiff with others endeavoured to rove upon his water, and with the Nets to catch his fish, and that for the safe-guard of his fishing he took and cut the Nets and Dars ; to which plea the Plaintiff demurred ; and there it was adjudged by the whole Court, that he could not by such colour cut the Nets and Dars, and judgment was thereupon given for the Plaintiff.

Doubtlesse our Fore-fathers well considered, that man to man was a wolf, and therefore made good Lawes to keep us from devouring one another, and amongst the rest a very good Statute was made in the thre and fortieth year of Queen Elizabeth, whereby it is provided, that in personal Actions in the Courts at Westminster, (being not for Land or Battery) when it shall appear to the Judges, (and be so by them signified) that the debt or damages to be recovered

## The Lawes of Angling.

bered amount not to the summe of forty shillings  
or above, the said Judges shall award to the  
Plaintiff no more costs than damages, but lesse  
at their discretion.

And now with my acknowledgiment of the  
advantage I have had both by your friendship  
and your book, I wish nothing that looks like an  
alteration in the first, nor any thing in the last,  
but that, by reason of the useful pleasure of it,  
you had called it The Arcadia of Angling, for it  
deserves that Title, and I would deserve the  
continuance of your Friendship.

---

# The Lawes of Angling.

Unto the Honorable the Lordes of the Privie Counsaile  
Sheweth That the Honorable the Lordes of the Privie Counsaile  
have caused to be printed the Lawes of Angling

as followeth

That whosoever shall take any fish by any other way  
than by the use of a rod and line shall be liable to the  
penalty of the law

And whosoever shall take any fish by the use of a  
rod and line shall be liable to the penalty of the law

And whosoever shall take any fish by the use of a  
rod and line shall be liable to the penalty of the law

And whosoever shall take any fish by the use of a  
rod and line shall be liable to the penalty of the law

And whosoever shall take any fish by the use of a  
rod and line shall be liable to the penalty of the law

And whosoever shall take any fish by the use of a  
rod and line shall be liable to the penalty of the law

And whosoever shall take any fish by the use of a  
rod and line shall be liable to the penalty of the law

And whosoever shall take any fish by the use of a  
rod and line shall be liable to the penalty of the law

And whosoever shall take any fish by the use of a  
rod and line shall be liable to the penalty of the law

And whosoever shall take any fish by the use of a  
rod and line shall be liable to the penalty of the law

And whosoever shall take any fish by the use of a  
rod and line shall be liable to the penalty of the law

And whosoever shall take any fish by the use of a  
rod and line shall be liable to the penalty of the law

# THE CONTENTS.

## Chapter 1.

**A** Conference betwixt an Angler, a Falkner,  
and a Hunter, each commending his Recreation.  
P. 1

Chap. 2. Observations of the Otter and Chub. P. 47

Chap. 3. How to fish for, and to dress the Chavender or Chub. P. 58

Chap. 4. Observations of the nature and breeding of the Trout, and how to fish for him. And the Milk-maids song. P. 66

Chap. 5. More directions how to fish for, and how to make the Trout an artificial minnow and fly: and some merriment. P. 81

Chap. 6. Observations of the Umber or Greyling, and directions how to fish for them. P. 131

Chap. 7. Observations of the Salmon, with directions how to fish for him. P. 134

Chap. 8. Observations of the Luce or Pike, with directions how to fish for him. P. 143

Chap. 9. Observations of the Carp, with directions how to fish for him. P. 158

Chap. 10. Observations of the Bream, and directions how to fish for him. P. 169

Chap. 11. Observations of the Tench, and advice how to angle for him. P. 178

Chap. 12. Observations of the Pearch, and directions how to fish for him. P. 181

Chap.



## The Contents.

- Chap. 13. Observations of the *Eele*, and other fish  
that want scales, and how to fish for them. p. 187
- Chap. 14. Observations of the *Barbel*, and directi-  
ons how to fish for him. p. 197
- Chap. 15. Observations of the *Gudgion*, the *Ruff*  
and the *Bleak*, and how to fish for them. p. 203
- Chap. 16. Is of nothing. p. 206
- Chap. 17. Of *Roach* and *Dace*, and how to fish for  
them. And of *Cadis*. p. 217
- Chap. 18. Of the *Minnow* or *Penck*, of the *Loach*,  
and of the *Bull-head* or *Millers-thumb*. p. 230
- Chap. 19. Of several Rivers, and some observati-  
ons of fish. p. 235
- Chap. 20. Of *Fish-ponds*, and how to order them. p. 240
- Chap. 21. Directions for making of a *Line*, and for  
the colouring of both *Red* and *Line*. p. 244
-

# THE TABLE.

## A

<b>A</b> ction better than Contemplation.	27
<i>Adonis.</i>	33
<i>Ammwell hill.</i>	347
Anr-flye.	220
Angles.	45
Angling. 17. a native art. 24. its antiquity:	25
allowed to the Clergy.	4
<i>Anchovis</i> artificial.	205
Aviaries of <i>Varro.</i>	11
Ayre exceeds Earth and Water. 8. its necessity.	9

## B

Baits for a <i>chub.</i>	62, 63
Baiting. 94. Ground-bait.	174, 223
<i>Barbell</i> industry. 36. spawns in <i>April.</i> 198. poison. 199	
lusty and cunning. <i>ibid.</i> baits proper for him.	208
roasted cheese.	201
Bees polity.	12
<i>Bleak.</i> 203. the fresh-water Sprat.	<i>ibid.</i>
Bones of a <i>Chevin</i> turn to a gristle.	64
<i>Brandling.</i> 91, 92, 184. its place. 91. its food.	93
the swelling of its knot.	93
<i>Bream.</i>	170, 172
<i>Bull-head.</i>	232
<i>Bombard.</i>	

## C

<i>Cadiz.</i>	226
<i>Charr.</i>	196
Primitive Christians.	7
<i>Cantharus.</i>	34
<i>Carps</i> and <i>Loaches</i> breed often.	159
<i>Carps</i> love gravel. 141. and <i>Marle-pits.</i>	243
come at the call of a bell.	229
<i>Carps</i> devoured by <i>Frogs.</i>	162
<i>Carps</i> faral day. 166. how to boyl it.	169
<i>Carps</i> proper baits.	166
<i>Cats</i> speak.	6

# The Table.

<i>Caribbeans</i> never eat flesh.	49
<i>Caterpillar.</i> 97. description.	100
<i>Cock-spar.</i> 217. Congre.	195
<i>Chub</i> dressed.	58
<i>Cuttle-fish.</i>	32

## D

<i>Dace.</i> 206, 217. its baits.	219
<i>Dare.</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Fr. Davison's</i> song.	123
<i>Dew-worms.</i>	91
<i>Dock</i> maggot.	171
<i>D. Donne's</i> Verses.	186
<i>Drag-hook.</i>	192
<i>Dun-flyc.</i>	61, 97

## E

<i>Earths</i> excellencies.	15
<i>Eeles</i> unbed at noise of thunder.	118
<i>Eeles</i> generate like Dew-worms.	188
<i>Eeles</i> breed of a particular dew.	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Eele</i> cakes. 189. alwayes in season.	195
<i>Eeles</i> never return from sea.	189
<i>Eeles</i> catched by powdere d beef.	190
<i>Eeles</i> and <i>Swallows</i> sleep all winter.	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Eeles</i> digged out of the earth by spades.	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>animal viviparum.</i>	191
<i>Eeles</i> hide themselves all day.	192
<i>Eele</i> roasted.	194

## F

<i>Falconer.</i>	4, 8, 14
<i>Falcon</i> ascends high. 8. understands words.	9
<i>Fence-moneths.</i>	54
<i>Fish</i> dyet commended.	20
<i>Fishermen</i> never upbraided by Christ for their employment.	37
<i>Fish</i> and Nets under size.	52
<i>Fishes</i> enemies. 53. Fish-ponds.	240
<i>Fish</i> and flesh Frogs.	152
<i>Flycs</i> all sorts. 97, 62. artificial twelve sorts.	106
Great	

## The Table.

Great Flyes feed upon the less.	99
Flie-making art.	110
Flyes twelve kinds.	106, 109
Frogs for baits.	185
Frogs mouth shut up all winter.	69, 153
Water-fox.	218

### G

Generation of flyes. 98. all by eggs.	ibid
Generation of Gentles.	222
Greyhounds properties.	17
Greyling feeds on gold.	132
Greggs. 191. Guiniad. 197. Gudgion.	203
Grub. 221. Groundling.	

### H

Hampshire brooks best.	128
Hayre-d'ing. 246. black hair round.	245
Hawks commended. 10. ten sorts of long-winged,	13
four of short-winged. <i>ib.</i> seven of inferiour ranks, <i>ib.</i>	
Hawthorn flye.	113
Hens care.	34
Hermit-fish.	32
Hodsdon.	2
Hunting games commended.	15, 16

### I

The Jews caviare.	164
-------------------	-----

### K

Kings-fishers nest.	224
---------------------	-----

### L

Lamprey, Lamprell, Lampern.	195
Lamprey lives sixty years.	190
Leather mouthed fish.	62, 197, 104, 218
Larks commendations.	10
Few Lawyers among Christians.	7
Ledget bait.	159
Lent dyet approved.	20
Liverock.	10
Directions for the Line.	245
Line to fish withall.	106

# The Table.

Linnet.	10
Loach.	231
Lob-worm.	91, 139

## N

Dean Nowel an Angler.	4
Night-fishing.	117
Nightingales praises.	11

## O

Oak-flye. 12. natural.	114
Otter. 3. Otter-dogs.	3, 47
Otter-gloves best against wet.	48
A tame Otter catches fish.	5

## P

Palmer-flye.	106, 113
Paste for bairs.	64, 166, 161, 171, 172, 181
Pater noster line.	205
Pearch wholsom. 182. spawns once a year.	ibid.
Penck.	230
Pike. 143. his boldness. 144. food.	145
Pike eats venemous Frogs <i>sine damno</i> .	145
breeds once a year.	147
Pike roasted.	156
No Pikes in Spain.	159
Pinto.	39
Pismires use.	15
A Poor man has more pleasure in eating than the rich.	105
Piper.	226
Ponds must lye dry a year.	4, 242
Pope or Ruff. 204. a greedy biter.	ibid.
Pride.	192

## R

Raven fed <i>Elijah</i> .	12
Rich men condemned.	5
Rivers of England.	235
Rivers differ as pastures.	70
Strange properties of Rivers.	79
Reach.	206

# The Table.

Robin-red-breſt.	11
Rod for fiſhing.	108
Ruds.	218
Ruff.	203
Ruff-coat.	227

## S

Samlet.	67, 135
Sargus.	33
Salmon ſpawns in Auguſt.	134
English Salmon beſt.	137
Salmon grows as faſt as a Goſling.	138
Salmon goes to Sea before Winter.	135
his baits.	139, 140
Scotting how made.	14
Seasons of fiſh.	218
Spawning time. 53. Trouts in October.	71
Spawn of the Chevin good.	62
Snigling.	193
Stones of the Pearch. 182. Tench.	179
Water-Swallow. 105. Sheep.	218
Swallow carries Letters between two Armies.	11
ſleeps all Winter. 69, 190. returns to the ſame chimney, as Salmon to the ſame river.	138
Sheeps bloud a good bait.	223
Straw-worm.	227
Stickle-bag.	223

## T

Theobalds.	2
Tench and Eete love mud.	241
Tench. 171. deſcription. 179. the Pike's Phyſician.	180
Tit-lark.	10
Tottenham hill.	1
Trouts ſeaſon with the Bucks. 66, 71. ſigns of being in ſeaſon. 72. good.	83
Barren Trout good in Winter.	66
Geneva Trouts three cubits long.	67
Fordidge Trout as big as a Salmon.	69

# The Table.

not to be taken with the Angle.	ibid.
Trout-lice.	71
Bull-trout.	70
Trout timorous like the Hare.	127
Trouts bait.	134
U	
umber; Trout-kind.	132
W	
wasps made baits.	213
Water first in the generation: 18. comprehends all the other Elements in the cause of all fruitfulness.	ibid.
Wheat-bait.	226
Whipping for Bleaks.	206
Fine Wool pastures.	130
Worms fit for baits.	62
Worms the several sorts. &c. how to make them appear.	93
Y	
Yelvets.	189

## Errata.

Plant p. 19. l. 8. are for have p. 147.



**F I N I S.**



1. 107423560407